

CONVERSATIONAL
TAHITIAN

*An Introduction
to the Tahitian Language
of French Polynesia*

D. T. Tryon

AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY PRESS
CANBERRA 1970

PL
6515
T7

© Darrell Trevor Tryon 1970

This book is copyright. Apart from any fair dealing for the purposes of private study, research, criticism, or review, as permitted under the Copyright Act, no part may be reproduced by any process without written permission. Inquiries should be made to the publisher.

Printed and manufactured in Australia

Registered in Australia for transmission by post as a book

To Gaye

National Library of Australia card no. & SBN 7081 0736 2
Library of Congress Catalog Card no. 74-100606

05825

FOREWORD

The present book—one of the first textbooks of Tahitian ever published in English—fills a serious gap in the literature on Polynesian languages, and will enable interested persons to acquire a sound practical knowledge of this important language of the Pacific. I can speak with feeling on this, having been in the position of trying, with little success, to learn Tahitian away from Tahiti while utilising the existing textbooks. Their shortcomings, especially on the phonetic level, are so great as to render this task nearly futile.

I am very pleased to see that this publication has resulted from the work carried out in the Department of Linguistics in the Research School of Pacific Studies of the Australian National University, and I welcome it as the fulfilment of a dream conceived during my first visit to Tahiti four years ago.

S. A. WURM
*Professor of Linguistics
Research School of Pacific Studies
Australian National University*

CONTENTS

| | | |
|-------------------------|--|------|
| Foreword, by S. A. Wurm | | vii |
| Introduction | | xiii |
| Lesson 1 | Pronunciation | 1 |
| | Consonants; vowels; vowel length; vowel sequences; glottal stop; words beginning with a vowel; the syllable; stress; elision; some common and useful phrases | |
| Lesson 2 | The Articles | 8 |
| | General articles; the dual; special articles | |
| Lesson 3 | Numerals and Time | 15 |
| | Cardinal numbers; usage of numerals; ordinal numbers; days of the week; months of the year; telling the time; temporal expressions | |
| Lesson 4 | The Adjective | 20 |
| | Normal modifiers; changing modifiers; comparative and superlative; equality; all, every; <i>āna'e</i> | |
| Lesson 5 | The Demonstrative | 24 |
| | <i>Teie; tēna; tēra; taua . . . ra; te reira</i> | |
| Lesson 6 | Possession | 26 |
| | Possessive particles; pronoun possessors; common noun possessors; proper noun possessors; possessive statements | |
| Lesson 7 | The Pronoun | 30 |
| | Pronouns subject; pronouns object; other object markers | |
| Lesson 8 | The Verb | 32 |
| | Word order; active verbs; passive verbs | |
| Lesson 9 | The Causative Verb | 41 |
| | <i>Fa'a-</i> or <i>ha'a-</i> ; <i>tā-</i> ; causative and passive; noun + <i>hia</i> ; dual forms of the verb; intensified verbs | |
| Lesson 10 | The Negative | 46 |
| | <i>'Aita</i> and <i>'aore</i> ; <i>'e'ita</i> and <i>'e'ore</i> ; <i>'e'ere</i> ; negative + <i>roa</i> ; <i>'aiteā</i> and <i>'aore ā</i> ; <i>'ore</i> | |
| Lesson 11 | Verbal Sentence Types | 49 |
| | Intransitive; transitive; dual object; attributive; | |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|-----|
| | passive; passive indirect object; impersonal verbs; <i>vai</i> | |
| Lesson 12 | Non-Verbal Sentences | 52 |
| | It is, there is; identificational; equational; to have | |
| Lesson 13 | Time and Frequency | 57 |
| | Time phrases; frequency phrases | |
| Lesson 14 | Location and Direction | 60 |
| | Location phrases (in, on, under, above, etc.); directionals (to, from, etc.) | |
| Lesson 15 | Optional Phrases | 66 |
| | Benefactive; accompaniment; manner | |
| Lesson 16 | Purpose and Cause | 70 |
| | Purpose (in order to, so that); cause (because) | |
| Lesson 17 | Imperatives | 73 |
| | The three degrees of imperative; Arrival in Tahiti (translation) | |
| Lesson 18 | The Interrogative I | 76 |
| | Yes?, no?; interrogative subject (who?); interrogative non-subject (whom?, which?, to whom?, whose?, by whom?); The Post Office (translation) | |
| Lesson 19 | The Interrogative II | 81 |
| | Why?; where?; when?; how?; what?; Conversation (translation) | |
| Lesson 20 | Dependent Sentences I | 87 |
| | Dependent subject; dependent non-subject; Visit to the Shops (translation) | |
| Lesson 21 | Dependent Sentences II | 92 |
| | Why; when; while, when; how; what; whether; that; since; where; Copra (translation) | |
| Lesson 22 | Special Verbal Forms | 97 |
| | Reflexive; reciprocal; emphatic pronoun; ability (can, able to); competence (know how to); attempted action (try to); The Market (translation) | |
| Lesson 23 | Desiderative, Necessitative, Conditional | 101 |
| | Desiderative (want, want to); necessitative (must, should, ought); conditional (if); Fishing (translation) | |
| Lesson 24 | Conjunctions | 106 |
| | Usage; Pearl-shell Diving (translation) | |
| Further Passages for Translation | | 108 |
| | Tahiti | 108 |
| | Things to do in Tahiti | 110 |
| | Planting Sweet Potatoes | 112 |
| | The Eel's Hole | 113 |
| | The Fourteenth of July | 114 |

| | | |
|--|---------------------------|-----|
| | Orange-picking | 117 |
| | The Apetahi Flower | 119 |
| | House-building | 120 |
| | Fishing with Stones | 121 |
| | The Breadfruit Legend | 123 |
| | The Lepers' Feast Day | 125 |
| | Key to Exercises | 127 |
| | Key to Translations | 136 |
| | The Tahitian Family | 146 |
| | Tahitian-English Glossary | 148 |
| | English-Tahitian Glossary | 161 |
| | Index | 174 |

INTRODUCTION

Tahitian is spoken in the Society Islands of French Polynesia. The main islands on which it is spoken are Tahiti, Moorea, Raiatea, Tahaa, Maupiti, Huahine, and Borabora. It is also widely spoken and understood in most of the islands of the Tuamotu archipelago.

Numerous grammars of Tahitian, written almost exclusively in French, have appeared in the past. The need has been felt for an up-to-date Tahitian grammar, written in English, especially in view of the development of tourism and the large number of English-speaking visitors to these islands. Previous grammars have been based on classical European models, and have not been entirely satisfactory in showing how Tahitian functions. Others have been written with the purpose of evangelisation in mind.

The aim of the present work is to present a course in conversational Tahitian, the Tahitian heard every day in Tahiti and the surrounding islands. It is hoped that by means of this book readers will quickly and clearly grasp the structure of the Tahitian language, so unlike that of European languages, and be able to communicate easily in it.

This work does not, however, constitute a normative grammar of Tahitian which states that such and such a construction is correct, to the exclusion of other constructions often heard. Such a grammar would need to be written by the Tahitians themselves. What is represented here is an attempt to eliminate the formal and often archaic Tahitian found in theological literature, and to concentrate on the language and expression of Tahiti as used in everyday affairs.

Conversational Tahitian is not written for linguists alone, but for people generally who are interested in Tahiti and Tahitian. For this reason, technical terms have been avoided as far as possible.*

This study does not follow the same lines as existing grammars of Tahitian, but looks at Tahitian within the framework of Oceanic languages. Some of the traditional descriptive features have, however, been retained in the interests of clarity. The present work consists of a series of graded lessons, with exercises. Once the basic

* Specialist linguistic papers on aspects of Tahitian are, however, planned for the near future.

structures have been established, passages for translation are introduced. An attempt has been made to make these passages as relevant as possible to everyday life and events in Tahiti. Keys to the exercises and translations have been provided, together with a Tahitian-English, English-Tahitian glossary. In the key to the translations, a rather literal translation has been given so that the student may follow it more easily; this has naturally rendered the English more stilted than would have been the case had a free translation been given.

The orthography of this work is based on the traditional orthography currently in use in Tahiti, but differs from it in the following ways:

- (i) long vowels are consistently marked;
- (ii) the glottal stop is indicated in all occurrences;
- (iii) the "elision" of traditional Tahitian orthography is not indicated (see §9).

During the preparation of this book, I have become indebted to many people and institutions. Firstly I would like to express my gratitude to the Australian National University, for making the research possible.

I wish to acknowledge my debt of gratitude to Professor S. A. Wurm, and to Drs D. C. Laycock, B. R. Finney, H. Bluhme, and N. Gunson for their advice and comment during the preparation of the manuscript.

In Tahiti, I am much indebted to the Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-mer, and especially to its Director, Mr H. Lavondès. I must also thank Mr Maco Tevane of Radio Tahiti for his assistance and comments, Mr Claude Robineau of O.R.S.T.O.M., and Mr and Mrs Joseph Adam of Taunua.

My special thanks are due to my principal informant and guide, Mr François Taumihau Peu, of Papeete, for his unflinching efforts and continued encouragement and co-operation.

To the many people unnamed, but certainly not forgotten, my sincere thanks for the generous assistance, co-operation, and hospitality given to me during my stays in Tahiti.

My thanks, also, to my parents for the invaluable assistance which they gave.

It is the hope of the author that this book may be of use to English speakers interested in Tahiti and Tahitian, and that from reading it they may gain some insight into the language, daily events, and pastimes of the peoples of the Society Islands.

Lesson 1

PRONUNCIATION

Before commencing the study of Tahitian grammar, it is necessary to enumerate the sounds in Tahitian and their pronunciation. Particular attention should be paid to pronunciation, as a bad pronunciation, even with a good grammatical command of the language, can result in confusion and total lack of communication.

1. Consonants

There are eight consonants in Tahitian,* namely:

f h m n p r t v

These approximate to the following sounds in English:

- f*, phonetically [f], as in friend;
- h*, phonetically [h], as in house; pronounced as [ç] as in German *ich*, or [ʃ] as in shoe when preceded by *i* and followed by *o*;
- m*, phonetically [m], as in mouse;
- n*, phonetically [n], as in nap;
- p*, phonetically [p], as in sponge; this sound is unaspirated, (i.e. it lacks the puff of air that accompanies the *p* in pill or put);
- r*, phonetically [r̥], is a so-called flap sound, similar to a single tap of the English rolled *r*; it is sometimes trilled like a Scottish *r*;
- t*, phonetically [t], as in stand; this sound is unaspirated, as for *p*, above;
- v*, phonetically [v], as in vine; *v* is sometimes pronounced *w*, as a free variant; it is also realised as [β], which is like an English *v*, except that it is produced with the upper and lower lips, instead of with the upper teeth and lower lip. However, the pronunciation of *v* as in vine is proposed to the reader, as it will cause no confusion, nor impede communication.

In some words, *r* and *n* occur as variants. Thus:

rava'i
nava'i

to be adequate

* The glottal stop should strictly be classed as a consonant, but for pedagogical reasons it is treated separately (§§ 5 and 6).

roa'a
noa'a

to obtain, to be acquired

One also finds *f* and *h* as variants, as in:

pufa
puha

copra

ūfi
ūhi

yam

tufa'a
tuha'a

share

When a word manifesting this phenomenon is used in the text of this book, the more common variant only is given.

2. Vowels

There are five vowels in Tahitian, as follows:

a e i o u

Their approximate English and French equivalents are:

a, phonetically [a], as in butter, or French *patte*, paw;

e, phonetically [e], as in French, *été*, summer;

i, phonetically [i], as in French *ville*, city,* and not unlike that in team, but shorter;

o, phonetically [o], as in French *eau*, water, or Scottish go, but shorter;

u, phonetically [u], as in French *cou*, neck, or English foot; in other words, this is a *u* sound made with strong lip rounding.

3. Vowel Length

In Tahitian there is a second series of vowels, which are long vowels corresponding to those in §2. They are the same in quality as those above, but are pronounced as if they were a double vowel.†

These vowels are:

ā, phonetically [a:], as in father, or French *pâté*, pie;

ē, phonetically [e:], as in *été*, summer, but longer;

ī, phonetically [i:], as in machine, but longer;

ō, phonetically [o:], as in go, or French *pôle*, pole;

ū, phonetically [u:], as in moo, or French *cou*, neck, but longer.

The long vowel will always be marked by a stroke over the vowel, as

* Note that *rahi* (big), *'inanahi* (yesterday), and *'ananahi* (tomorrow) are often pronounced *rahai*, *'inanahei*, and *'ananahei* respectively.

† In §§ 7 and 8, on the syllable and stress, a long vowel is regarded as a sequence of two identical vowels.

above, throughout the lessons that follow. Numerous pairs of words are distinguished solely by the length of the vowel. Short vowels are pronounced very short when they form a minimal contrast with a word containing a long vowel, but not otherwise, as in the following selection of examples:

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>parau</i> | to speak | <i>pārau</i> | pearl-shell |
| <i>matau</i> | hook | <i>mātau</i> | to know |
| <i>marō</i> | dry | <i>māro</i> | to be stubborn |
| <i>nana</i> | herd | <i>nāna</i> | for him |
| <i>mati</i> | match | <i>māti</i> | March |
| <i>fefe</i> | twisted | <i>fēfē</i> | a boil |
| <i>pepe</i> | butterfly | <i>pēpē</i> | to wound |
| <i>'i</i> | by, at | <i>'ī</i> | full |
| <i>'api</i> | page | <i>'āpī</i> | new |
| <i>poro</i> | corner | <i>pōro</i> | a marble |
| <i>maro</i> | royal belt | <i>māro</i> | dry |
| <i>pupu</i> | group | <i>pūpū</i> | sea-shell |
| <i>tutu</i> | kind of tree | <i>tūtū</i> | a cook |
| <i>'ua</i> | past tense marker | <i>ūa</i> | rain |

4. Vowel Sequences

Sequences of two vowels are common in Tahitian (sometimes more than two), as follows;

| | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>ā</i> | <i>ae</i> | <i>ai</i> | <i>ao</i> | <i>au</i> |
| <i>ea</i> | <i>ē</i> | <i>ei</i> | <i>eo</i> | <i>eu</i> |
| <i>ia</i> | <i>ie</i> | <i>ī</i> | <i>io</i> | <i>iu</i> |
| <i>oa</i> | <i>oe</i> | <i>oi</i> | <i>ō</i> | <i>ou</i> |
| <i>ua</i> | <i>ue</i> | <i>ui</i> | <i>uo</i> | <i>ū</i> |

With sequences of vowels, normally each vowel of the sequence is distinctly pronounced.*

Examples of vowel sequences:

tāpū, to cut; *haere*, to go; *vai*, to be; *āo*, world, day; *parau*, to speak;

mea, thing; *'ē*, different; *hei*, garland; *reo*, language; *pareu*, sarong;

'ia, when; *'ohie*, easy; *'ī*, full; *hio*, to whistle; *fiu*, weary;

hoa, friend; *hoe*, to paddle; *hopoi*, to carry; *pōro*, marble; *hou*, before;

* However, *ai*, *au*, *ae*, and *oi* tend to become diphthongised.

pua'a, pig; *ueue*, to shake; *nui*, immense; *'uo'ou*, clean; *pūpū*, sea-shell.

Sequences of two consonants are not found in Tahitian.

5. Glottal Stop

This sound, marked ' throughout the text, is of prime importance in the pronunciation of the Tahitian language. It consists of blocking the air-stream with the glottis. It is similar to the sound heard, for example, in the cockney pronunciation of the word "butter", where the "tt" is not sounded, but replaced by a glottal stop, thus "bu'er". In American English, a glottal stop also occurs often in words such as "cotton", which becomes "co'n".* Some Tahitian examples:

| | | | |
|---------------|------|---------------|---------|
| <i>pua'a</i> | pig | <i>i'oa</i> | name |
| <i>'apo'o</i> | hole | <i>ha'ari</i> | coconut |

6. Words Beginning with a Vowel

Particular attention should be paid to words beginning with a vowel in Tahitian, as there are four possible pronunciations of the initial vowel, as follows:

(i) The vowel may be short and preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

| | |
|---------------|--------------|
| <i>'oe</i> | you |
| <i>'umara</i> | sweet potato |
| <i>'uri</i> | dog |
| <i>'amu</i> | eat |

(ii) The vowel may be long and preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

| | |
|------------|----------|
| <i>'āu</i> | to swim |
| <i>'ia</i> | to steal |

(iii) The vowel may be short, not preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

| | |
|-------------|-------|
| <i>au</i> | I, me |
| <i>atua</i> | God |

(iv) The vowel may be long, not preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

| | |
|-----------|------------|
| <i>āo</i> | world, day |
| <i>āu</i> | nice, good |

When the initial vowel is long, but not preceded by a glottal stop, it is lightly pharyngealised (pronounced with a rough breathing). When this vowel is followed immediately by a glottal stop, the rough breathing becomes very strong, as in:

| | |
|------------|------|
| <i>ī'a</i> | fish |
|------------|------|

* The Tahitian glottal stop differs somewhat from the cockney one in that the blockage of the air-stream is often incomplete, especially between identical vowels, producing what could be called a "glottal croak" or glottal tremulant.

| | |
|------------|-----------|
| <i>ā'o</i> | to preach |
| <i>ō'e</i> | famine |

Several sets of words in Tahitian are distinguished solely by the manner of articulation of the initial vowel. A selection of examples follows:

| | | | |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>'au</i> | to chew | <i>'oe</i> | you singular |
| <i>'āu</i> | to swim | <i>ō'e</i> | famine |
| <i>āu</i> | nice, good | <i>'o'e</i> | sword |
| <i>ā'u</i> | to hunt | <i>ōe</i> | bell |
| <i>au</i> | I, me | <i>'ua</i> | past tense marker |
| <i>'ata</i> | to laugh | <i>'u'ā</i> | to flower |
| <i>āta</i> | cloud | <i>'ū'a</i> | kind of crab |
| <i>'atā</i> | difficult | <i>ūa</i> | rain |
| <i>'oi</i> | sharp, pointed | <i>'a'o</i> | the fat of a fish |
| <i>ōi</i> | to mix | <i>ā'o</i> | to preach |
| <i>'o'i</i> | to sprain | <i>āo</i> | world, day |
| <i>oi</i> | to almost do something | <i>'ori</i> | to dance |
| | | <i>ōri haere</i> | to go for a walk |

7. The Syllable

The syllable in Tahitian consists of $\pm C + N$, where C equals a consonant or glottal stop, and N equals either a short vowel, a long vowel (i.e. two identical vowels), or a sequence of two different vowels. \pm indicates that the consonant is optional, while + indicates that the vowel or sequence is obligatory in the syllable. Where a sequence of three vowels occurs, the first two should be taken as one syllable, except when the second vowel is long.

Examples:

| | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>pō-ti-'i</i> | girl |
| <i>ta-mai-ti</i> | boy |
| <i>ta-'a-ta</i> | person |
| <i>'oi-a</i> | he, she |
| <i>'o-tā-ne</i> | male (fish, tree) |
| <i>ma-nu</i> | bird |

8. Stress

In Tahitian, the primary stress is not nearly so heavy as in English in many words, and at times it appears that no particular syllable bears

the primary stress. However, there are four stress rules which are in evidence:

(i) In words containing either a sequence of different vowels or a long vowel, the stress falls on the first vowel of the sequence, or on the long vowel.

Examples:

| | |
|-----------------|----------|
| <i>tiare</i> | flower |
| <i>rāiti</i> | rice |
| <i>tia'q</i> | shoe |
| <i>pahi</i> | ship |
| <i>tamāiti</i> | boy |
| <i>tamāhine</i> | daughter |

(ii) With words containing two such sequences (i.e. sequences of different or same vowels, that is, long vowels), then the stress falls on the first of the sequences in the word.

Examples:

| | |
|----------------|-------|
| <i>fēiā</i> | group |
| <i>tamāroa</i> | boy |
| <i>farāoa</i> | bread |

(iii) With words not containing long vowels or sequences of vowels, the stress falls on the penultimate syllable.

Examples:

| | |
|---------------|--------|
| <i>fāre</i> | house |
| <i>mā'o</i> | shark |
| <i>ta'āta</i> | person |
| <i>'ohīpa</i> | work |

(iv) With compound words, usually polysyllabic, each part of the compound takes its own stress.

Examples:

| | |
|-------------------------|-------|
| <i>pūa'a-niho</i> | goat |
| <i>pūa'a-horo-fenūa</i> | horse |

9. Elision

When a word ends in the same vowel as the initial vowel of the following word, the identical vowels form a sequence (i.e. a long vowel). For example, *'ia d'ahiāta* (when it is dawn) is pronounced as if it were *'iā' ahiāta*.

In some Tahitian orthographies, this process has been called elision and marked with an apostrophe, but in this work such elisions will not be marked as they are quite regular.

When a short vowel and a long vowel come together in different words, the short vowel is elided; thus *noa ātu* (unless) becomes *noātu*.

10. Some Common and Useful Phrases

Some useful phrases and common idioms in Tahitian are as follows:

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>'Ia ora na.</i> | Hello. Greetings. Good morning. |
| <i>'Ia ora na 'oe!</i> | Hi there! |
| <i>A haere mai!</i> | Come here! |
| <i>Haere mai.</i> | Welcome. |
| <i>Parahi.</i> | Good-bye. |
| <i>Ara'uā'e.</i> | See you later. |
| <i>'E aha te huru?</i> | How are you? |
| <i>'E aha tō 'oe huru?</i> | How are you? |
| <i>Maita'i roa.</i> | Very good. |
| <i>Manava, maeva!</i> | Welcome (to dignitaries). |
| <i>Manuia!</i> | Cheers! Good luck! |
| <i>'E hoa!</i> | Friend! |
| <i>'E homā!</i> | Friends! |
| <i>'E.</i> | Yes. |
| <i>'Aita.</i> | No. |
| <i>Atira.</i> | That's enough. |
| <i>'E āra!</i> | Be careful! |
| <i>Nō te aha?</i> | Why? |
| <i>'Eiaha 'e rū!</i> | There's no hurry; wait! |
| <i>'E rū!</i> | Wait a minute! |
| <i>'Aita 'e pe'ape'a.</i> | It doesn't matter. |
| <i>'O vai tēra?</i> | Who is that? |
| <i>Māmū!</i> | Be quiet! Silence! |
| <i>Maniania!</i> | Stop the noise! |
| <i>A haere ātu!</i> | Go away! |
| <i>Fa'ātea!</i> | Scram! |
| <i>'E aha?</i> | What? |
| <i>'Ehia moni?</i> | How much is this? |
| <i>'E mea māmā.</i> | It is cheap. |
| <i>'Aita tā'u 'e moni.</i> | I have no money. |
| <i>Tei hea te hotera?</i> | Where is the hotel? |
| <i>Tei hea te fare rata?</i> | Where is the Post Office? |
| <i>'I teie nei mahāna*</i> | Today. |
| <i>'Inanahi; 'ananahi</i> | Yesterday, tomorrow. |
| <i>Maurūru 'ia 'oe.</i> | Thank you. |

* Throughout this book the second vowel of *mahāna* has been marked long. Many speakers, however, pronounce the vowel short in this word.

Lesson 2

THE ARTICLES

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------|------------|
| <i>te manu</i> | the bird | <i>te pua'a</i> | the pig |
| <i>te 'ava'ava</i> | the cigarette | <i>te vahie</i> | the wood |
| <i>te fare</i> | the house | <i>te taro</i> | the taro |
| <i>na metua</i> | the parents | <i>te mai'a</i> | the banana |
| <i>te 'uri</i> | the dog | <i>te vi</i> | the mango |
| <i>te pape</i> | the water | <i>te mamoe</i> | the sheep |
| <i>te i'a</i> | the fish | <i>te fēti'i</i> | the family |
| <i>te mā'a</i> | the food | <i>te ari'i</i> | the king |
| <i>te 'uru</i> | the breadfruit | <i>te moa</i> | the fowl |
| <i>te tiare</i> | the flower | <i>te 'i'ita</i> | the pawpaw |
| <i>te fē'i</i> | the red banana | <i>te ūpo'o</i> | the head |
| <i>te ha'ari</i> | the coconut | <i>te farāoa</i> | the bread |
| <i>te fa'a'apu</i> | the plantation | <i>te raiti</i> | the rice |
| <i>te pāha</i> | the wild boar | <i>te moni</i> | the money |
| <i>te reo</i> | the language | <i>te farāne</i> | the franc |
| <i>te pahī</i> | the steamer | <i>hanere</i> | hundred |
| <i>te poti</i> | the boat | <i>hitu</i> | seven |
| <i>te hoa</i> | the friend | <i>pae</i> | five |
| <i>te maeha'a</i> | the twin | <i>toru</i> | three |
| <i>te tia'a</i> | the shoe | <i>maita'i</i> | good |
| <i>te tamāroa</i> | the boy | <i>'ite</i> | to see |
| <i>te tamari'i</i> | the child | <i>reva</i> | to leave |
| <i>te ta'ata</i> | the person | <i>na rima</i> | the hands |
| <i>te parahira'a</i> | the chair | | |

The articles in Tahitian will be explained in three sections, general articles, the dual, and special articles.

11. General Articles

TABLE OF ARTICLES

| | Singular | Plural | Dual |
|------------|------------------------|---|---------------|
| Definite | <i>te</i> | <i>te mau</i> | <i>tau na</i> |
| Indefinite | <i>te hō'e</i> | <i>te mau, te hō'e mau</i> | <i>nau na</i> |
| | <i>te tahi</i> | <i>{ te tahi mau } { vetahi mau }</i> | |
| Stative | <i>'o</i> <i>'e</i> | | |

Te. The article *te* is the definite article, meaning "the". In conversation it is also used as an indefinite article, meaning "a, an".

Examples:

| | |
|------------------|----------------|
| <i>te fare</i> | the house |
| <i>te ta'ata</i> | the man |
| <i>te 'uru</i> | the breadfruit |

Te mau. The plural of *te* is *te mau*. Thus we have:

| | |
|----------------------|------------|
| <i>te mau fare</i> | the houses |
| <i>te mau ta'ata</i> | the men |
| <i>te mau 'uri</i> | the dogs |

(No plural sign is added to the noun itself.) Note that *te* alone may be used to indicate a plural if the idea of plurality is not stressed, for example:

| | |
|------------------|------------|
| <i>te ta'ata</i> | the people |
|------------------|------------|

Te hō'e. The indefinite article, meaning "a, an", is indicated by *te hō'e*, thus:

| | |
|---------------------|---------|
| <i>te hō'e pahī</i> | a ship |
| <i>te hō'e fare</i> | a house |

Te hō'e mau. A limited plural is indicated by *te hō'e mau*. Example:

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| <i>te hō'e mau tamari'i</i> | some children |
|-----------------------------|---------------|

Compare this with the unrestricted plural: *te mau tamari'i* children, the children.

Te tahi. This article is commonly used in a very general sense, and means "a, another, a different one". Thus:

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| <i>te tahi fare</i> | another house |
| <i>te tahi ta'ata</i> | another man |

Te tahi mau. The plural of *te tahi* is *te tahi mau*, or optionally *vetahi mau*. Thus:

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>te tahi mau fare</i> | the other houses |
| <i>vetahi mau fare</i> | |

'O. The article 'o has three functions:

(i) It is a kind of demonstrative article, meaning "it is", with proper nouns and pronouns. Thus:

| | |
|------------------|--------------|
| 'o <i>Tahiti</i> | it is Tahiti |
| 'o <i>Teri'i</i> | it is Terii |
| 'o <i>vau</i> | it is I |
| 'o <i>rātou</i> | it is they |

(ii) It is also used with proper nouns used as subject. Thus:

| | |
|----------------------------|----------|
| 'ua <i>reva ātu 'o Peu</i> | Peu left |
|----------------------------|----------|

(iii) 'O is also used as kind of emphatic pronoun marker with 'oe (= you sing.), but not with other pronouns. Example:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| 'e <i>ta'ata maita'i 'o 'oe</i> | you are a good man |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|

For explanation of this sentence structure, see §73.

'E. This article has two functions:

(i) 'E corresponds to 'o and is used with all common nouns with the same demonstrative force. Thus:

| | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 'e <i>ta'ata</i> | it is a person |
| 'e <i>vahine</i> | it is a woman |
| 'e <i>mau vahine</i> | they are women |

But: 'o *te ta'ata* it is the man
'o *te vahine* it is the woman

(ii) 'E is also a vocative, used when addressing people; the person addressed may also be followed by *ē* when further emphasis is sought. Examples:

| | |
|------------------------|---------------|
| 'E <i>Teri'i tāne!</i> | Oh! Mr Terii! |
| 'E <i>hoa!</i> | Friend! |
| 'E <i>Teri'i ē!</i> | Oh! Terii! |

12. The Dual

In Tahitian, unlike most European languages, there exists a series of articles used to indicate duality, such as two birds, two men, the hands, the feet. The dual is also used to indicate a restricted plural, up to five or six and certainly no more than ten.

The three dual articles used in conversational Tahitian are:

na, nau, tau na.

Na. This article is used in two ways:

(i) It is the article used with two persons or objects which are normally found in pairs. Thus:

| | |
|------------------|-------------|
| <i>na rima</i> | the hands |
| <i>na metua</i> | the parents |
| <i>na ta'ata</i> | the men |

(ii) It is also used with numbers up to ten, with reference to persons, if the actual number is specified. Thus:

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| 'ua 'ite au 'i <i>na ta'ata to'ohitu</i> | I saw seven men |
|--|-----------------|

However, *na* may be used without restriction of number when the subjects may be considered to form a group. Examples:

| | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>na moni 'e pae hanere farāne.</i> | The sum of five hundred francs |
| 'ua 'ite au 'i <i>na ta'ata 'e toru hanere</i> | I saw three hundred men |

The usage of the numerals themselves is discussed in §16.

Nau. This article is used under the same conditions as for *na*, when the subject in question is near the speaker, and sets up an opposition with *tau na*. Thus:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>nau tamari'i</i> | the youths |
| <i>nau fare</i> | the houses |
| <i>nau manu</i> | the birds |
| <i>a hi'o na 'i tēra nau tia'a</i> | look at these shoes |
| <i>nau moni 'e pae hanere farāne</i> | 500 francs |

Tau na. One uses this article normally when the subject is not near the speaker. Thus:

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| ('e) <i>tau na ta'ata</i> | the men |
| ('e) <i>tau na feti'a</i> | the stars |
| <i>tau na tumu 'anani</i> | the orange trees |
| <i>tau na fa'a'apu taro</i> | the taro fields |
| <i>tau na maeha'a</i> | the twins |

13. Special Articles

(a) Indication of Sex. In Tahitian, gender is not indicated with nouns, as it is in European languages. A number of words exist to specify sex where required, as follows:

Tāne and Vahine. *Tāne* is used with kinship terms* and proper nouns denoting human beings to indicate the masculine; *vahine* is used to indicate the feminine. These correspond to the English Mr and Mrs. Examples:

| | |
|----------------------|-----------|
| <i>Teri'i tāne</i> | Mr Terii |
| <i>Teri'i vahine</i> | Mrs Terii |

* The full list of kinship terms is given in §146.

te metua tāne the father
te metua vahine the mother

'*Otāne* and '*ovahine*. These indicate masculine and feminine with reference to trees or plants, fish, and shellfish, but only when there is a reason to specify the sex. Thus:

'*i'ita 'otāne* male pawpaw
 '*i'ita 'ovahine* female pawpaw

Ōni and *ufa*. These indicate masculine and feminine respectively, with reference to animals. Thus:

moa ōni a rooster
moa ufa a hen
 '*uri ōni* a dog
 '*uri ufa* a bitch

Pa'e and *maia'a*. These two terms are also applied to animals to indicate male and female, but are used to indicate that they are adult animals capable of reproduction or having already reproduced. Thus:

te pua'a pa'e the boar
te pua'a maia'a the sow

(b) The Young of Animals. *Fanau'a* and *pinia*. *Fanau'a* is used to indicate the young of any animal except a sheep, where *pinia* is used. Thus:

te pua'a fanau'a the piglet
te 'uri fanau'a the puppy
 But: *te pinia mamoe* the lamb

(c) Quantity. In Tahitian there is a series of words indicating a group, and as these occur frequently in conversation they will be explained immediately.

Hui is used respectfully of a group of esteemed people. Thus:

te hui mana the authorities
te hui ari'i the royal family
te hui ra'atira the population

Mā follows the noun and indicates a family group. Examples:

Teri'i mā the Teriis
Peu mā the Peu family

Nana indicates a flock or herd. Thus:

te hō'e nana i'a a shoal of fish
te hō'e nana mamoe a flock of sheep

Taura indicates a race or breed of men or animals. Thus:

te hō'e taura 'uri a breed of dogs
te hō'e taura ta'ata a race of men

Ruru indicates a bundle or collection of something which is tied with a rope or liana. Thus:

te ruru vahie the bundle of wood
te ruru mā'a the bundle of food

'Amui indicates a bundle of goods, tied, but containing all the same articles in the one bundle. Thus:

te 'amui taro the package of taros
te 'amui 'uru the package of breadfruit

'Atā is used almost synonymously with *ruru*. Example:
te 'atā 'uru the collection of breadfruit

Pe'etā indicates a bunch still attached to a branch. Thus:

te pe'etā 'uru the bunch of breadfruit
te pe'etā ha'ari the bunch of coconuts

Atari indicates a bunch of fruit picked from the tree. Examples:

te atari fē'i the bunch of red bananas
te atari mai'a the bunch of bananas

Pupā indicates a bunch, usually of smaller fruits. Thus:

te pupā vine the bunch of grapes
te pupā vi the bunch of mangoes

Pu'e indicates a collection of men, animals, or foods. Thus:

te pu'e ta'ata the troop of men
te pu'e i'a the collection (catch) of fish
te pu'e tiare the heap of flowers

Feiā indicates an ensemble, an entire group of people engaged in some activity. Thus:

te feiā fa'a'apu the farmers
te feiā tāi'a the fishermen
te feiā rātere the tourists

Ma'a indicates a small quantity when applied especially to food. Thus:

ma'a raiti a little rice
ma'a farāoa a little bread
ma'a pape a little water

14. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *Te fare.* 2. *Te mau ta'ata.* 3. *Te hō'e 'uri.* 4. *Te tahi ta'ata.* 5. *Na rima.* 6. *Tau na ta'ata.* 7. *'E nau fare.* 8. *Peu iāne.* 9. *Te 'uri ufa.* 10. *Te pua'a ōni.* 11. *Te 'uri maia'a.* 12. *Te moa ōni.* 13. *Te 'i'ita 'ovahine.* 14. *Te tahi mau fare.* 15. *Teri'i vahine.* 16. *Te taura 'uri.* 17. *Te hō'e nana i'a.* 18. *Te ruru mā'a.* 19. *Te 'atā 'uru.* 20. *Te pupā tiare.* 21. *Peu mā.* 22. *Te pu'e ta'ata.* 23. *Te pupā vi.* 24. *Te pe'etā ha'ari.* 25. *Te 'amui 'uru.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. The man. 2. The men. 3. A dog. 4. The parents. 5. The hands. 6. A few men. 7. Two chairs. 8. Mr Terii. 9. The bitch. 10. The sow. 11. The puppy. 12. The lamb. 13. The dogs (male). 14. The hen. 15. The two hens. 16. A flock of sheep. 17. A group of girls. 18. A pack of dogs. 19. A bunch of bananas. 20. A bundle of wood. 21. A bunch of flowers. 22. The authorities. 23. The fishermen. 24. The Peu family. 25. A bunch of mangoes.

Lesson 3

NUMERALS AND TIME

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>pohe</i> | to die | <i>ho'i</i> | to return |
| <i>ma'i</i> | to be sick | <i>tā'a</i> | to fish |
| <i>'ehia?</i> | how many? | <i>te hepetoma</i> | the week |
| <i>to'ohia?</i> | how many? | <i>te 'ava'e</i> | the month, moon |
| <i>'i roto</i> | in, inside | <i>te matahiti</i> | the year |
| <i>te piha</i> | the room | <i>te hora</i> | the time, hour |
| <i>roa'a</i> | to catch, obtain | <i>te miniti</i> | the minute |
| <i>te pō</i> | the night | <i>te va'a</i> | the canoe |
| <i>haere</i> | to go | <i>te pōti'i</i> | the girl |

15. Cardinal Numbers

The cardinal numbers in Tahitian are as follows:

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 <i>hō'e, tahi</i> | 15 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma pae</i> |
| 2 <i>piti</i> | 16 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma ōno</i> |
| 3 <i>toru</i> | 17 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu</i> |
| 4 <i>maha</i> | 18 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma va'u</i> |
| 5 <i>pae</i> | 19 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma iva</i> |
| 6 <i>ōno</i> | 20 <i>piti 'ahuru</i> |
| 7 <i>hitu</i> | 21 <i>piti 'ahuru ma hō'e</i> |
| 8 <i>va'u</i> | 30 <i>toru 'ahuru</i> |
| 9 <i>iva</i> | 40 <i>maha 'ahuru</i> |
| 10 <i>hō'e 'ahuru</i> | 50 <i>pae 'ahuru</i> |
| 11 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e</i> | 60 <i>ōno 'ahuru</i> |
| 12 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma piti</i> | 100 <i>hō'e hanere</i> |
| 13 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma toru</i> | 101 <i>hō'e hanere ma hō'e</i> |
| 14 <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma maha</i> | 1000 <i>hō'e tauatini</i> |

Tauatini may also indicate multitudes. Example:*'ua tauatini e 'ua tauatini te ta'ata*

there were thousands and thousands of people

16. Usage of Numerals

The usage of the numerals will be discussed in enumerations; as subject; and as object.

(a) Enumerations. In enumerations of persons and objects alike, the particle *'e* precedes the numeral in all instances, except for numerals between ten and nineteen, as follows:

'e piti ta'ata there are two persons
'e hitu va'a there are seven canoes
'e toru 'ahuru va'a there are thirty canoes
'e toru 'ahuru ta'ata there are thirty persons

But: *hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu va'a* there are seventeen canoes
hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu ta'ata there are seventeen persons

With numbers less than ten, the restricted plural or dual articles, *tau na*, *na*, and *nau*, are frequently used, as in:

'e piti tau na ta'ata there are two persons
'e hitu na va'a there are seven canoes
'e hitu tau na va'a there are seven canoes

Or: *'e na va'a 'e hitu* there are seven canoes
'e na ta'ata 'e maha there are four persons

These enumerations are most frequently used in response to the question, "how many?", rendered in Tahitian by *to'ohia?* or *'ehia?*

To'ohia? is used formally to ask how many, of persons. If this interrogative is used, then *to'o-* must precede the numeral in the reply, if the number is less than ten, as in:

To'ohia ta'ata 'i roto 'i tēra piha?
 How many persons are in that room?
To'omaha.

Four.

If the number is greater than ten, then the rules explained above apply.

'Ehia? is used formally to ask how many, of things.

In conversational Tahitian, however, *'ehia?* is used of persons and things alike. Thus:

'Ehia ta'ata 'i roto 'i teie piha?
 How many persons are in this room?
'E pae [hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e, 'e toru 'ahuru].
 Five [eleven, thirty].
'Ehia i'a tā 'oe 'i roa'a 'inanahi?
 How many fish did you catch yesterday?
'E pae [hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e, 'e toru 'ahuru].
 Five [eleven, thirty].

(b) As Subject. When the subject of the sentence is qualified by a numeral, the numeral may either precede or follow the noun to which it refers. Examples:

'Ua ho'i mai 'e toru tau na ta'ata.

Three people came back.

'Ua ho'i mai 'e pae hanere ta'ata.

Five hundred men came back.

'Ua ho'i mai tā'u 'e toru na 'uri.

My three dogs came back.

Or: *'Ua ho'i mai na ta'ata 'e toru.*

Three people came back.

'Ua ho'i mai tā'u na 'uri 'e toru.

My three dogs came back.

(c) As Object. When the object of the verb is qualified by a numeral, the numeral is preceded by the particle *'e*, as above, with the exception of numbers from ten to nineteen. Examples:

'Ua 'ite au 'i na ta'ata 'e toru.

I saw three persons.

'Ua 'ite au 'i na ta'ata hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu.

I saw seventeen persons.

'Ua 'ite au 'i na ta'ata 'e pae hanere.

I saw five hundred men.

17. Ordinal Numbers

| | | | |
|---------------|--------|---------------|--------|
| <i>a tahi</i> | first | <i>a maha</i> | fourth |
| <i>a piti</i> | second | <i>a pae</i> | fifth |
| <i>a toru</i> | third | | |

A may be replaced by *te* with all numerals except *tahi* without any change in meaning. Thus:

| | | | |
|------------------|------------|-------------------|------------|
| <i>te piti</i> | second | <i>te toru</i> | third |
| <i>matamua</i> | the first | <i>te maha ō'</i> | the fourth |
| <i>te piti ō</i> | the second | <i>te pae ō'</i> | the fifth |
| <i>te toru ō</i> | the third | | |

The second, third, etc., thing is conveyed in Tahitian by *te* plus numeral, followed by *ō* plus the noun in question, with the exception of "the first", which is rendered by *matamua* following the noun.

Examples:

Te toru ō te pō 'ua ho'i mai vau.

The third night I returned.

Te piti ō te pō 'ua haere vau 'e tā'a.

The second night I went fishing.

Te pō matamua 'ua haere vau 'e tā'a.

The first night I went fishing.

The number of times an action is performed is indicated by the cardinal number preceded by *ta'i-*. Thus:

ta'ipiti twice

ta'itoru three times
ta'imaha four times
Tāta'i- preceding the numeral indicates that the number is squared.

Thus:

tāta'itoru 3 × 3
tāta'imaha 4 × 4
tāta'ipae 5 × 5

18. Days of the Week

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Monire</i> | Monday | <i>Māhana Mā'a</i> | Saturday |
| <i>Mahāna Piti</i> | Tuesday | <i>Tapati</i> | Sunday |
| <i>Mahāna Toru</i> | Wednesday | <i>te hepetoma</i> | the week |
| <i>Mahāna Maha</i> | Thursday | <i>'i te hepetoma 'i mua</i> | next week |
| <i>Faire</i> | Friday | <i>'i te hepetoma 'i ma'iri</i> | last week |
| <i>Mahāna Pae</i> | | <i>ā'e nei</i> | |
| | | <i>'i teie hepetoma</i> | this week |

19. Months of the Year

| | | | |
|----------------|----------|---------------|-----------|
| <i>Tenuare</i> | January | <i>Tiurai</i> | July |
| <i>Fepuare</i> | February | <i>Atete</i> | August |
| <i>Māti</i> | March | <i>Tetepa</i> | September |
| <i>Eperera</i> | April | <i>Atopa</i> | October |
| <i>Mē</i> | May | <i>Novema</i> | November |
| <i>Tiumu</i> | June | <i>Titema</i> | December |

te 'ava'e the month
'i te 'ava'e 'i mua next month
'i te 'ava'e 'i ma'iri ā'e nei last month
te piti nō Atete August 2
te maha nō Mē May 4
te pae nō Māti March 5
te matahiti the year
'i te matahiti 'i mua next year
'i te matahiti 'i ma'iri ā'e nei last year
te piti nō Māti 'i te matahiti
 1968 March 2 1968

20. Telling the Time

'E aha te hora?
Hora ha? What is the time?
'Ua hora piti It has become two o'clock.
'E hora piti It is two o'clock.
'E hora 'ahuru ma hō'e. It is eleven o'clock.

'*Ua* and '*e* may be used one for the other in conversational Tahitian.

'Ua hora hitu e te āfa. It is half-past seven.

'E hora piti e te āfa. It is half-past two.

Minutes to the Hour. There are two methods of indicating minutes to the hour.

(i) *'E hitu miniti toe 'e hora piti ai.* It is 1.53.

'E piti miniti toe 'e hora pae ai. It is 4.58.

(ii) *'E hitu miniti toe 'e tae ātu ai 'i te hora piti.* It is 1.53.

'E piti miniti toe 'e tae ātu ai 'i te hora pae. It is 4.58.

The first method is more frequent in conversation, the second being more formal.

Minutes past the Hour. In the same way, there are two methods of indicating minutes past the hour.

(i) *'E hora piti ma'iri hō'e 'ahuru miniti.* It is 2.10.

'E hora pae ma'iri 'e piti miniti. It is 5.02.

(ii) *'E hō'e 'ahuru miniti 'i ma'iri nō te hora piti.* It is 2.10.

'E piti miniti 'i ma'iri nō te hora pae. It is 5.02.

21. Temporal Expressions

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>'i teie nei mahāna</i> | today |
| <i>'ananahi</i> | tomorrow |
| <i>'inanahi</i> | yesterday |
| <i>'inanahi ātu</i> | the day before yesterday |
| <i>'ananahi ātu</i> | the day after tomorrow |
| <i>'i teie po'ipo'i</i> | this morning |
| <i>'i napō</i> | last night |
| <i>'ananahi 'ia pō</i> | tomorrow night |
| <i>a napō</i> | tomorrow night |
| <i>te pō</i> | night, evening |

22. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *'E toru tau na ta'ata.* 2. *Na 'uri 'e toru.* 3. *'E toru na i'a.* 4. *'E piti 'ahuru ta'ata.* 5. *'E na ta'ata to'opiti.* 6. *Te pae 'ō te pō.* 7. *'Ehia i'a tēra?* 8. *'E ōno.* 9. *'Te ōno 'ō te mau pōti'i.* 10. *'Ua hora 'ahuru ma piti.* 11. *'E hora toru ma'iri hō'e 'ahuru miniti.* 12. *'E hora hitu e te āfa.* 13. *Te ōno nō Māti.* 14. *'E piti miniti toe 'e hora pae ai.* 15. *'I te hepetoma 'i mua.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. Three men. 2. Four dogs. 3. How many men are there? 4. There are two men. 5. The sixth night. 6. It is half-past two. 7. It is six minutes to three. 8. It is nine minutes past four. 9. Twenty-six men. 10. The fourth of December. 11. The eleventh of May. 12. Next year. 13. The first of April. 14. Ten minutes to six. 15. Sixty coconuts.

Lesson 4

THE ADJECTIVE

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>nehenehe</i> | beautiful | <i>ta'ato'a</i> | all |
| <i>purotu</i> | handsome | <i>pauroa</i> | all |
| <i>roa</i> | long | <i>āna'e</i> | alone, together |
| <i>poto</i> | short | <i>te pōti'i</i> | the girl |
| <i>'ino</i> | bad | <i>te mea</i> | the thing |
| <i>maita'i</i> | good | <i>te puai</i> | the strength |
| <i>rahi</i> | big | <i>te ari'i</i> | the king |
| <i>'ite</i> | wise | <i>te ari'i vahine</i> | the queen |
| <i>iti</i> | small | <i>te maramarama</i> | the intelligence |
| <i>āu</i> | lovely | <i>te vitiviti</i> | the skill |
| <i>haviti</i> | beautiful | <i>te va'a</i> | the outrigger canoe |
| <i>marū</i> | calm, gentle, soft | <i>te tino</i> | the body |
| <i>no'ano'a</i> | perfumed | <i>te reo</i> | the voice, language |
| <i>'ato'a</i> | all | <i>te rouru</i> | the hair (head) |
| <i>pa'ato'a</i> | all | | |

23. Normal Modifiers

The adjective always follows the noun that it qualifies. Examples:

te hō'e fare nehenehe a beautiful house

te pōti'i purotu the beautiful girl

te mau pōti'i purotu the beautiful girls

When a numeral and an adjective occur describing the same noun, the adjective normally precedes the numeral. Thus:

te mau pōti'i purotu 'e iva the nine beautiful girls

In an enumeration, the numeral precedes the noun. Thus:

'e iva mau pōti'i purotu there are nine beautiful girls

When two adjectives modify the same noun, the second adjective normally becomes a noun, and is joined to the first by *e*. Examples:

tō 'oe rouru roa e te haviti your beautiful long hair

te tiare no'ano'a e te haviti the beautiful fragrant flower

However, if the first adjective is either *rahi*, "big", or *iti*, "small", then the second adjective follows the first without any conjunction.

Thus:

tō 'oe reo iti marū your sweet little voice

24. Changing Modifiers

A few adjectives in Tahitian take reduplicative forms in the dual and plural, as follows:

| Singular | Dual | Plural |
|-----------------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>roa</i> (long) | <i>roroa</i> | <i>roaroa</i> |
| <i>poto</i> (short) | <i>popoto</i> | <i>potopoto</i> |
| <i>'ino</i> (bad) | <i>'i'ino</i> | <i>'i'ino</i> |
| <i>maita'i</i> (good) | <i>maita'i</i> | <i>maitata'i</i> |
| <i>rahi</i> (big) | <i>rahi</i> | <i>rarahi</i> |

(Note that *maita'i* and *rahi* do not take a reduplicative form in the dual.) Examples:

te ta'ata 'ino the bad man

te mau ta'ata 'i'ino the bad men

Roaroa and *potopoto* are also used as emphatic forms, meaning "very long" and "very short".

25. The Comparative and Superlative

Rahi translates the English "very". Thus:

te hō'e ta'ata 'ite rahi a very wise man

Roa also translates "very", and is more widely used than *rahi*. Thus:

te 'uri maita'i roa the very good dog

Ā'e is used to convey the comparative degree. Thus:

te ta'ata poto the short man

te ta'ata poto ā'e the shorter man

te ta'ata poto roa ā'e the shortest man

When a comparison with another person or object is made, the following three constructions are used:

(i) *'e mea* $\left[\begin{matrix} rahi \\ iti \end{matrix} \right] \bar{a}'e \dots 'i$

Examples:

'E mea rahi ā'e te pahī 'i te poti.

The steamer is bigger than the boat.

'E mea rahi ā'e vau 'ia 'oe.

I am bigger than you.

'E mea iti ā'e tā'u moni 'i tā 'oe.

My money is less than yours.

Note that *iti* translates “less”, and does not apply to physical size in comparisons. When “smaller in stature” is meant, then *hu’a* replaces *iti*, as in:

'E mea hu'a ā'e 'o Moana 'ia 'oe.
Moana is smaller than you.

(ii) $'e \begin{bmatrix} rahi \\ iti \end{bmatrix} \dots 'i$

Example:

'E rahi tō'u 'ite 'i tō 'oe.
My knowledge is greater than yours.

(iii) $\begin{bmatrix} 'e \\ 'ua \end{bmatrix} hau \dots 'i$

Example:

'E hau tō 'oe puai 'i tō'u.
You are stronger than me.

26. Equality

When sameness is expressed, there are three possible constructions:

(i) *'ua faito noa . . . 'i* (it is equal)

Example:

'Ua faito noa te rahi 'ō te hapaina hinano 'i te hapaina manuia.
The Hinano glass is the same size as the Manuia glass.

(ii) *hō'e ā . . . e* (it is one, same)

Example:

Hō'e ā tō te ari'i maramarama e tō te ari'i vahine.
The king is as intelligent as the queen.
(Lit. is one the king's intelligence and the queen's)

(iii) *'e āu . . . 'i*

Example:

'E āu tō te tamaiti vitiviti 'i tō te metua tāne.
The son is as skilful as the father.

(Lit. is equal the son's skill to that of the father)

A parallel construction, *'e āu . . . mai*, is used to translate “like, as”.

Example:

'E āu 'oe mai te mimi.
You are like a cat.

27. All, Every

In Tahitian there are four words corresponding to “all”, which are used in the following three ways:

(i) *'Ato'a* is placed directly after noun. Examples:

te mau ta'ata 'ato'a all the men
te mau mea 'ato'a all the things

However, if *'ato'a* precedes the noun, it takes on the same meaning as when it follows the verb, namely “also”. Example:

'e tanā 'ato'a afata tauiha'a and also his parcel

(ii) *Pa'ato'a* and *ta'ato'a* signify “all together”, and may follow either the verb or the noun. Examples:

te mau ta'ata pa'ato'a all the men
te haere pa'ato'a ātura rātou they all went
te mau 'uri ta'ato'a all the dogs

Pa'ato'a is normally used with animate subjects, while *ta'ato'a* is used with either animate or inanimate subjects.

(iii) *Pauroa* is almost synonymous with *pa'ato'a* and *ta'ato'a*, but with stronger emphasis on “together”. Example:

'I te reira taimē 'e horo pauroa te i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aua.
Then all the fish rush into the enclosure.

28. Āna'e

When *āna'e* follows the noun or pronoun, it is a modifier signifying “alone, only”. Examples:

'oia āna'e he alone
tātou āna'e we (pl.) alone

When *āna'e* follows the verb, it has an adverbial function, signifying “together”. Example:

'E haere āna'e tātou! Let us all go together!

29. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *Na rima nehenehe.*
2. *Te mau 'uri nehenehe.*
3. *Te mau va'a roaroa.*
4. *Te 'uri maita'i roa.*
5. *'E piti 'uri maita'i.*
6. *'E hitu mau fare haviti.*
7. *Te ta'ata poto ā'e.*
8. *Te mau ta'ata 'i'ino.*
9. *'E mea rahi ā'e te pu'a 'i te 'uri.*
10. *'E mea hu'a ā'e te fare 'ō Peu 'i tō 'oe.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. The beautiful house.
2. The beautiful houses.
3. The good dog.
4. There are a few long outrigger canoes.
5. The best dog.
6. The very good dog.
7. There are eight bad men.
8. The dog is as big as the pig.
9. The dog is smaller than the pig.
10. The pig is bigger than the dog.

Lesson 5

THE DEMONSTRATIVE

In Tahitian there are four principal demonstrative words, *teie*, *tēna*, *tēra* and *taua . . . ra*. These normally precede the word they modify, with the exception of the special demonstrative sentence, which will be explained later.

30. *Teie*, this (near the speaker, in space and time). Examples:

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>teie fare</i> | this house |
| <i>teie ta'ata</i> | this man |
| <i>teie fare nehenehe</i> | this beautiful house |

In the plural:

| | |
|---|--------------------|
| <i>teie mau fare</i> | these houses |
| <i>teie mau ta'ata</i> | these men |
| <i>teie na rima</i> | these hands |
| <i>teie mau ta'ata maitata'i 'e</i> <i>ōno</i> | these six good men |

31. *Tēna*, that (near the person addressed, in space and time). Examples:

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>tēna ta'ata</i> | that man |
| <i>tēna mau ta'ata 'i'ino</i> | those bad men |
| <i>tēna pōti'i nehenehe</i> | that beautiful girl |

It should be noted that *teie* may become *eie*, and *tēna* become *ēna*, but only in the plural. These forms, however, are not very current in conversational Tahitian.

32. *Tēra*, that (not near the speakers, in space and time). Examples:

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>tēra ta'ata 'ino</i> | that bad man |
| <i>tēra mau 'uri</i> | those dogs |
| <i>tēra tau na ta'ata</i> | those men (few) |
| <i>tēra vahine</i> | that woman |

33. *Taua . . . ra*, used with approximately the same meaning as *tēra*. Examples:

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| <i>taua pōti'i ra</i> | that girl |
| <i>taua mau pōti'i ra</i> | those girls |

34. *Te reira*, renders "that which has been already mentioned in the conversation or previously referred to". Examples:

| | |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| <i>'i te reira taime</i> | at that time |
| <i>'i te reira fa'a</i> | in that valley |

35. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *Teie 'uri maita'i roa*.
2. *Tēra ta'ata poto*.
3. *Tēna fare nehenehe*.
4. *Tēra mau pōti'i haviti*.
5. *Teie pōti'i haviti*.
6. *Tēra ta'ata 'ino*.
7. *Tēra tau na ta'ata 'i'ino*.
8. *Taua mau 'uri ra*.
9. *Taua 'uri ra*.
10. *Teie ta'ata poto ā'e*.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. This beautiful house.
2. These beautiful dogs.
3. These lovely hands.
4. That big dog.
5. Those long outriggers.
6. These few big men.
7. This small boy.
8. Those four good dogs.
9. That small cat.
10. Those beautiful girls.

Lesson 6

POSSESSION

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>te hoa</i> | the friend | <i>te 'ahu</i> | the dress, clothes |
| <i>te 'upe'a</i> | the net | <i>te pōti'i</i> | the girl |
| <i>te hape</i> | the mistake | <i>te tia'a</i> | the shoes |
| <i>te feti'a</i> | the star | <i>te tipi</i> | the knife |
| <i>te ra'i</i> | the sky | <i>te vi</i> | the mango |
| <i>te 'apo'o</i> | the hole | <i>te 'avae</i> | the leg |
| <i>te 'iore</i> | the rat | <i>te afata</i> | the box |
| <i>te 'ohipa</i> | the work | <i>te ro'i</i> | the bed |
| <i>te tāmuta fare</i> | the carpenter | <i>te puta</i> | the book |
| <i>te tumu rā'au</i> | the tree | <i>te rata</i> | the letter |
| <i>te 'ama'a</i> | the branch | <i>te uāti</i> | the watch |
| <i>te fa'a'apu</i> | the plantation | <i>te 'amura'amā'a</i> | the table |
| | | <i>toro</i> | to extend |

36. Possessive Particles

When an item is possessed in Tahitian, it must belong to one of two classes, the first taking *tō*, 'ō, *nō*, and the second taking *tā*, 'ā, *nā*. Tahitian, then, has two noun classes for purposes of possession.

Tō, 'ō, *nō*. This series of possessive particles is used:

- (i) when there is an absolute and intimate relationship between possessor and possessed;
- (ii) with all parts of the body;
- (iii) with anything that forms part of a whole;
- (iv) with anything that emanates from an animate or inanimate object;
- (v) with anything which shelters or protects or is of great use to someone.

Tā, 'ā, *nā*. This series is used to mark acquired possession without any idea of intimate or absolute relationship.

37. Pronoun Possessors

| | |
|---------------------|------|
| <i>tō'u, tā'u</i> | my |
| <i>tō'oe, tā'oe</i> | your |

POSSESSION

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>tōna, tāna</i> | his, her |
| <i>tō māua, tā māua</i> | our (dual exclusive) |
| <i>tō tāua, tā tāua</i> | our (dl inclusive) |
| <i>tō 'ōrua, tā 'ōrua</i> | your (dl) |
| <i>tō rāua, tā rāua</i> | their (dl) |
| <i>tō mātou, tā mātou</i> | our (pl. exc.) |
| <i>tō tātou, tā tātou</i> | our (pl. inc.) |
| <i>tō 'outou, tā 'outou</i> | your (pl.) |
| <i>tō rātou, tā rātou</i> | their (pl.) |

Note: "exclusive" excludes the person addressed; "inclusive" includes the person addressed.

Plural: *tō'u mau, tā'u mau*
tō'oe mau, tā'oe mau, etc.

Examples: *tō'u ūpo'o* my head
tō'oe fare your house
tō'u rima my hand
tō'u va'a my outrigger
tō rātou metua their parents
tō 'outou hoa your friend
tō 'outou mau hoa your friends
tō'oe mau fare your houses
tā'u 'uri my dog
tā'oe 'upe'a your net
tō'oe hape your mistake
 But: *tā'u vahine* my wife
tā'u parau my word

Tō'oe and *tā'oe*, "your", become *to* when the idea of possession is not stressed. Examples:

A toro mai na 'i to rima. Give me your hand.
Teie to tamāhine. Here is your daughter.

Ta'u and *tana** may be used instead of *tō'u* and *tōna* when possession is not stressed. Example:

'Ua toro mai ra 'i tana rima.
 He held out his hand.

38. Common Noun Possessors

With common noun possessors, 'ō, 'ā, *nō*, *nā*, *tō*, and *tā* are the possessive particles.

* Note that the vowels are pronounced short.

There are two possible constructions:

- (i) noun + $\begin{bmatrix} \bar{o}, n\bar{o} \\ \bar{a}, n\bar{a} \end{bmatrix}$ + possessor

Examples:

| | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>te feti'a 'ō te ra'i</i> | the stars of the sky |
| <i>te 'apo'o 'ō te 'iore</i> | the rat's hole |
| <i>te 'uri 'ā te tavana</i> | the chief's dog |
| <i>te 'ohipa 'ā te tāmuta fare</i> | the carpenter's work |

Note: *nō, nā* may replace *'ō, 'ā*. Example:

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>te feti'a nō te ra'i</i> | the stars of the sky |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|

Nō, nā seem to indicate a deeper sense of possession than *'ō, 'ā*, but many Tahitians employ one for the other without any such distinction.

- (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} t\bar{o} \\ t\bar{a} \end{bmatrix}$ + *te* possessor + noun

Examples:

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>tō te tumu rā'au 'ama'a</i> | the branch of the tree |
| <i>tō te ra'i feti'a</i> | the stars of the sky |
| <i>tā te tavana 'uri</i> | the chief's dog |
| <i>tā te tāmuta fare 'ohipa</i> | the carpenter's work |

This construction is more elegant and formal than the first one, although both are used in current conversation.

39. Proper Noun Possessors

With proper noun possessors there are two possible constructions, the first being more current than the second.

- (i) noun + $\begin{bmatrix} \bar{o} \\ \bar{a} \end{bmatrix}$ + possessor

Examples:

| | |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| <i>te fa'a'apu 'ā Peu</i> | Peu's plantation |
| <i>te ūpo'o 'ō Peu</i> | Peu's head |

- (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} t\bar{o} \\ t\bar{a} \end{bmatrix}$ + possessor + noun

Examples:

| | |
|------------------------|------------------|
| <i>tō Peu ūpo'o</i> | Peu's head |
| <i>tā Peu fa'a'apu</i> | Peu's plantation |

40. Possessive Statements

This construction, which will be commented on at length later, represents a complete utterance, whereas the constructions in §§37,

38, and 39 do not. The construction meaning A belongs to B, for example, consists of:

$$\begin{bmatrix} n\bar{o} \\ n\bar{a} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \text{pronoun} \\ \text{common noun} \\ \text{proper noun} \end{bmatrix}$$

Examples:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Nā'u teie 'uri.</i> | This is my dog. |
| <i>Nō'u teie fare.</i> | This is my house. |
| <i>Nō 'oe tēra fare.</i> | That is your house. |
| <i>Nō te pōti'i tēra 'ahu.</i> | That is the girl's dress. |
| <i>Nōna tēra fare.</i> | That is his house. |
| <i>Nō Peu tēra tia'a.</i> | Those are Peu's shoes. |
| <i>Nā Peu tēra vahine.</i> | That is Peu's wife. |

41. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

- Tāna tipī.*
- Tā māua 'uri.*
- Tō 'outou va'a.*
- Tōna na rima.*
- Tā 'oe mau 'uri haviti 'e pae.*
- Te mau 'uri 'ā te tavana.*
- Te 'ama'a 'ō te hō'e tumu vi.*
- Tā te mau tāmuta fare 'ohipa.*
- Te 'avae 'ō Teri'i.*
- Te mau 'uri 'ā Peu.*
- Nā rātou teie mau afata.*
- Nō 'ōrua tēra mau ro'i.*
- Nā'u tēra puta.*
- Nā te tavana tēra 'uri.*
- Nā teie vahine tēra rata.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

- My dogs.
- His head.
- Their (pl.) boats.
- My six knives.
- Their (pl.) beautiful clothes.
- The head of the fish.
- The branch of the mango tree.
- The man's work.
- Terii's head.
- Peu's leg.
- That is my letter.
- Those are his boxes.
- This is Terii's book.
- This is my watch.
- This is your (pl.) table.

Lesson 7

THE PRONOUN

42. Pronouns Subject

| | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>au, vau</i> | I |
| <i>'oe</i> | you |
| <i>'oia, 'ona</i> | he, she, it |
| <i>tāua</i> | we (dl inc.) |
| <i>māua</i> | we (dl exc.) |
| <i>'ōrua</i> | you (dl) |
| <i>rāua</i> | they (dl) |
| <i>tātou</i> | we (pl. inc.) |
| <i>mātou</i> | we (pl. exc.) |
| <i>'outou</i> | you (pl.) |
| <i>rātou*</i> | they |

There are two forms of the first person singular pronoun, *au* and *vau*. *Au* is used after words ending in *-e* or *-i*, while *vau* is used elsewhere. Examples:

| | |
|---------------------|-------------|
| <i>'e ta'iri au</i> | I shall hit |
| <i>'e horo vau</i> | I shall run |

In conversational Tahitian, however, *vau* may replace *au* at any time.

There are also two forms of the third person singular pronoun, *'oia* and *'ona*. *'Oia* is the usual pronoun, and *'ona* is mostly used only if the subject has already been mentioned in the conversation, and is known to both speakers. *'Ona* has a demonstrative force which *'oia* lacks.

43. Pronouns Object

Since we will be learning in the next lesson how verbs work and how to make sentences, the direct object forms of the pronouns are given here:

| | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>'ia'u</i> | me |
| <i>'ia 'oe</i> | you |
| <i>'iāna</i> | him, her |
| <i>'ia tāua</i> | us (dl inc.) |

* *Vera* also, meaning "those about whom one has spoken". Not much used in conversation.

| | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>'ia māua</i> | us (dl exc.) |
| <i>'ia 'ōrua</i> | you (dl) |
| <i>'ia rāua</i> | them (dl) |
| <i>'ia tātou</i> | us (pl. inc.) |
| <i>'ia mātou</i> | us (pl. exc.) |
| <i>'ia 'outou</i> | you (pl.) |
| <i>'ia rātou</i> | them (pl.) |

Examples:

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>'ua ta'iri au 'ia 'oe</i> | I hit you (Lit. hit I you) |
| <i>'ua 'ite au 'ia rātou</i> | I saw them |
| <i>'ua here 'oia 'ia'u</i> | she loves me |

44. Other Object Markers

It is convenient to give the direct object forms for common nouns and proper nouns immediately, as they will be used in Lesson 8, and are absolutely essential.

(a) Proper Nouns. When a proper noun is the direct object of a verb, it must be preceded by *'ia* in the same way as a pronoun. Examples:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>'ua hohoni te 'uri 'ia Peu</i> | the dog bit Peu (Lit. bit the dog Peu) |
| <i>'ua 'ite au 'ia Teri'i</i> | I saw Terii |

(b) Common Nouns. When a common noun is the direct object of a verb, it must be preceded by *'i* followed by the normal subject articles as seen above. Examples:

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>'Ua tāpū te ta'ata 'i te tumu 'uru.</i> | The man cut down the breadfruit tree. |
| (Lit. cut the man the breadfruit tree) | |
| <i>'Ua tāpū te ta'ata 'i te mau tumu ha'ari.</i> | The man cut down the coconut trees. |

Lesson 8

THE VERB

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>haere</i> | to go | <i>āni</i> | to ask |
| <i>tāmā'a</i> | to eat | <i>pahono</i> | to answer |
| <i>'āu</i> | to swim | <i>ta'i</i> | to cry |
| <i>ta'oto</i> | to sleep | <i>tauturu</i> | to help |
| <i>maniania</i> | to make a noise | <i>ha'api'i</i> | to learn |
| <i>oti</i> | to finish | <i>ho'o mai</i> | to buy |
| <i>tāpū</i> | to cut | <i>hina'aro</i> | to like, want |
| <i>horo'a</i> | to give | <i>tāpe'a</i> | to stop |
| <i>tupa'i</i> | to kill | <i>inu</i> | to drink |
| <i>mā'iti</i> | to elect | <i>horo</i> | to run |
| <i>ūa</i> | to rain | <i>tunu</i> | to cook |
| <i>hohoni</i> | to bite | <i>fa'aro'o</i> | to hear |
| <i>'ia</i> | to steal | <i>rave</i> | to do, make, take |
| <i>pa'imi, 'imi</i> | to look for | | |
| <i>fati</i> | to break | <i>'amu</i> | to eat |
| <i>parari</i> | to break, smash | <i>parau</i> | to speak |
| <i>tanu</i> | to plant | <i>pohe</i> | to die |
| <i>pure</i> | to pray | <i>te hapaina</i> | the glass |
| <i>'ite</i> | to see, know | <i>te 'ofa'i</i> | the stone |
| <i>hi'o</i> | to look at | <i>te tao'a</i> | the gift |
| <i>fa'ari'i</i> | to receive | <i>te ha'ari</i> | the coconut |
| <i>tae</i> | to arrive | <i>te ūfi</i> | the yam |
| <i>te mātete</i> | the market | <i>te 'umara</i> | the sweet potato |
| <i>te vahie</i> | the wood | <i>te pia</i> | the beer |
| <i>te tavana</i> | the chief | <i>te pere'o'o uira</i> | the car |
| <i>te tāupo'o</i> | the hat | <i>te titeti</i> | the ticket |
| <i>te i'oa</i> | the name | <i>te manureva</i> | the plane |
| <i>te miti</i> | the sea | <i>te pūha</i> | the copra |
| <i>te mata'i</i> | the wind | <i>te moni</i> | the money |
| <i>te i'ore</i> | the rat | <i>te 'oire</i> | the city |

45. Word Order

Before discussing the verb in Tahitian and its tenses, it should be

pointed out that the word order in the sentence is different from many European languages.

Normal word order = verb + subject + object

46. Active Verbs

(a) Tenses. Tahitian tenses do not correspond to those of European languages, a fact to which students of Tahitian should pay particular attention.

The tenses are as follows:

(i) *te* + verb + *nei* + subject

This form indicates an immediate future or a present continuous tense. It translates "in the act of", with overtones of proximity to the speaker. The table of verb forms is as follows:

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>te tāmā'a nei au</i> | I am eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei 'oe</i> | you are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei 'oia</i> | he/she is eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei tāua</i> | we (dl inc.) are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei māua</i> | we (dl exc.) are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei 'ōrua</i> | you two are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei rāua</i> | they two are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei tātou</i> | we (pl. inc.) are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei mātou</i> | we (pl. exc.) are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei 'outou</i> | you (pl.) are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei rātou</i> | they are eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei te vahine</i> | the woman is eating |
| <i>te tāmā'a nei 'o Teri'i</i> | Terii is eating |

When the action is not thought of as taking place in close proximity to the speaker, then *nei* is replaced by *maira*. Example:

Te 'amu maira rāua 'i te 'uru.

They two are eating breadfruit.

(ii) *te* + verb + *ra* + subject

This verbal construction indicates "was in the act of" and "has been in the act of doing something for some time", with overtones of distance from the speaker. It approximates to the European imperfect tense, which, however, lacks the second Tahitian meaning. The table of verb forms is:

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>te 'āu ra vau</i> | I was swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra 'oe</i> | you were swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra 'oia</i> | he/she was swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra tāua</i> | we (dl inc.) were swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra māua</i> | we (dl exc.) were swimming |

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>te 'āu ra 'ōrua</i> | you two were swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra rāua</i> | they two were swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra tātou</i> | we (pl. inc.) were swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra mātou</i> | we (pl. exc.) were swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra 'outou</i> | you (pl.) were swimming |
| <i>te 'āu ra rātou</i> | they were swimming |
| <i>te ta'oto ra te 'uri</i> | the dog was sleeping |
| <i>te ta'oto ra 'o Teri'i</i> | Terii was sleeping |

(This may also mean "Terii is still asleep and has been for some time".)

(iii) 'ua + verb + subject

This construction indicates both a past action and a present state, that is to say, the action has been completed while the result of the action is at present being felt. In Tahitian conversation this is the construction most commonly used to indicate any past tense. The table of verb forms is as follows:

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>'ua tāpū vau 'i te vahie</i> | I cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū 'oe 'i te vahie</i> | you cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū 'oia 'i te vahie</i> | he/she cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū tāua 'i te vahie</i> | we (dl inc.) cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū māua 'i te vahie</i> | we (dl exc.) cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū 'ōrua 'i te vahie</i> | you two cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū rāua 'i te vahie</i> | they two cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū tātou 'i te vahie</i> | we (pl. inc.) cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū mātou 'i te vahie</i> | we (pl. exc.) cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū 'outou 'i te vahie</i> | you (pl.) cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū rātou 'i te vahie</i> | they cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū te vahine 'i te vahie</i> | the woman cut the wood |
| <i>'ua tāpū 'o Teri'i 'i te vahie</i> | Terii cut the wood |

(iv) 'i + verb + na + subject

This construction indicates the idea of a recently completed action. It is not used as frequently in conversation as the form with 'ua.* The table of forms is as follows:

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>'i haere na vau 'i te mātete</i> | I went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na 'oe 'i te mātete</i> | you went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na 'oia 'i te mātete</i> | he/she went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na tāua 'i te mātete</i> | we (dl inc.) went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na māua 'i te mātete</i> | we (dl exc.) went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na 'ōrua 'i te mātete</i> | you two went to the market |

* The 'i . . . na form is, however, used when consequence is expressed; cf. §88.

| | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <i>'i haere na rāua 'i te mātete</i> | they two went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na tātou 'i te mātete</i> | we (pl. inc.) went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na mātou 'i te mātete</i> | we (pl. exc.) went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na 'outou 'i te mātete</i> | you (pl.) went to the market |
| <i>'i haere na rātou 'i te mātete</i> | they went to the market |

(v) 'i + verb + iho $\left[\begin{array}{l} nei \\ ra \end{array} \right]$ + subject

This construction indicates a very recent past tense, "to have just done something". The form with *ra* indicates rather "I had just . . .". The following is the table of forms:

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei vau 'i te vahie</i> | I have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei 'oe 'i te vahie</i> | you have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei 'oia 'i te vahie</i> | he/she has just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei tāua 'i te vahie</i> | we (dl inc.) have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei māua 'i te vahie</i> | we (dl exc.) have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei 'ōrua 'i te vahie</i> | you two have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei rāua 'i te vahie</i> | they two have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei tātou 'i te vahie</i> | we (pl. inc.) have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei mātou 'i te vahie</i> | we (pl. exc.) have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei 'outou 'i te vahie</i> | you (pl.) have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei rātou 'i te vahie</i> | they have just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei te ta'ata 'i te vahie</i> | the man has just cut the wood |
| <i>'i tāpū iho nei 'o Teri'i 'i te vahie</i> | Terii has just cut the wood |

(vi) 'e mea maoro + nominalised verb. This is a non-verbal sentence type, conveying the distant past tense in Tahitian. Examples:

'E mea maoro 'i teie nei tō'u haerera'a 'i Mo'orea.

I went to Moorea long ago.

(Lit. it is long now my going to Moorea)

'E mea maoro te horo'ara'a hia te tao'a 'i te tavana.

The gift was given to the chief long ago.

Further reference to this structure is made in §73.

(vii) 'ua oti + possessive adjective + noun + 'i te + verb.

This is a special construction used to indicate completed action. Examples:

'Ua oti tā'u vahie 'i te tāpū.

I have finished cutting the wood.

(Lit. is finished my wood the cutting)

Pau replaces *oti* to indicate "finished", when the verb is concerned with eating. Thus:

'Ua pau tā te vahine 'ina'i pua'atoro 'i te 'amu.

The woman has finished eating the beef.

(viii) 'ua mātau + subject + 'i te + verb

Habitual action, indicated by *mātau*, to be used to, to be accustomed to, is expressed by the above construction. Examples:

'Ua mātau vau 'i te haere 'e ti 'i 'i te 'anani.

I am used to going to pick oranges.

(Lit. I am used to the going and pick oranges)

'Ua mātau vau 'i te rave 'i te 'ohipa.

I am used to working.

(ix) 'e + verb + subject

This construction is used to indicate any future tense, and may be set out as follows:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 'e haere au 'i te 'oire | I shall go to town |
| 'e haere 'oe 'i te 'oire | you will go to town |
| 'e haere 'oia 'i te 'oire | he/she will go to town |
| 'e haere tāua 'i te 'oire | we (dl inc.) shall go to town |
| 'e haere māua 'i te 'oire | we (dl exc.) shall go to town |
| 'e haere 'ōrua 'i te 'oire | you two will go to town |
| 'e haere rāua 'i te 'oire | they two will go to town |
| 'e haere tātou 'i te 'oire | we (pl. inc.) shall go to town |
| 'e haere mātou 'i te 'oire | we (pl. exc.) shall go to town |
| 'e haere 'outou 'i te 'oire | you (pl.) will go to town |
| 'e haere rātou 'i te 'oire | they will go to town |
| 'e tupa'i te ta'ata 'i te hō'e pua'a | the man will kill a pig |
| 'e tupa'i 'o Teri'i 'i te hō'e pua'a | Terii will kill a pig |

If emphasis is sought, the subject may precede the verb. Thus:

'Ananahi vau 'e haere ai 'i te mātete.

Tomorrow I shall go to the market.

The directional, *ai*, is explained in §81(d), and may be ignored for purposes of this lesson.

(x) *mai* + verb + *roa* + subject

This is the construction used to indicate the frustrative form of the verb, "almost, nearly". Examples:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>mai pohe roa 'oia</i> | he nearly died |
| <i>mai fati roa tō'u 'avae</i> | I nearly broke my leg |
| <i>mai hohonu roa te 'uri 'ia'u</i> | the dog almost bit me |

(b) Special Verb Fillers. In European languages, the verb slot in the sentence is usually filled by what is known as a verb. In Tahitian, as we have just seen above, this is the case also in the majority of cases. However, it is not uncommon for the verb slot to be filled by a part of speech other than a verb in the Tahitian sentence.

In Tahitian, the verb slot in the sentence may also be filled by a noun, an adjective, or an interrogative. Examples will make the point clear:

'Ua mata'i 'i teie nei.

It is blowing now.

(Lit. it winds now)

'E 'ava'e tātou 'i Maupiti.

We will spend a month on Maupiti.

(Lit. will month we on Maupiti)

'Ua tapati au 'i Pape'ete.

I spent Sunday in Papeete.

'Ua haumi te fenua.

The ground is wet.

'Ua maoro 'oia 'i tāna 'ohipa.

He is late for work.

Te aha ra tēra vahine?

What is that woman doing?

(c) Nouns Formed from Verbs. In Tahitian, verbs expressing movement or state may become abstract nouns when preceded by the article *te*. Examples:

| | | | |
|---------------|----------|------------------|---------|
| <i>mana'o</i> | to think | <i>te mana'o</i> | thought |
| <i>ta'oto</i> | to sleep | <i>te ta'oto</i> | sleep |
| <i>mata'u</i> | to fear | <i>te mata'u</i> | fear |
| <i>ora</i> | to live | <i>te ora</i> | life |

More commonly, the nominalising suffix *-ra'a* converts verbs into nouns, almost without exception. In this case, the resulting noun form is participial in sense; that is, the noun becomes an action noun. The principle will become clear when the following examples are considered:

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------|----------------------|---------------------|
| <i>pure</i> | to pray | <i>te purera'a</i> | the prayer, praying |
| <i>tāmā'a</i> | to eat | <i>te tāmā'ara'a</i> | the feast, feasting |
| <i>hoe</i> | to row | <i>te hoera'a</i> | the rowing |
| <i>tae</i> | to arrive | <i>te taera'a</i> | the arrival |
| <i>haponu</i> | to send | <i>te haponora'a</i> | the sending |
| <i>'āu</i> | to swim | <i>te 'āura'a</i> | the swimming |
| <i>hamani</i> | to build | <i>te hamanira'a</i> | the making |
| <i>pafa'i</i> | to gather | <i>te pafa'ira'a</i> | the gathering |

47. Passive Verbs

The passive in Tahitian will be treated in three sections.

(i) verb + *hia* + subject + object + agent

The passive form of the verb consists in placing *hia** after the verb stem. Examples:

- '*Ua hohonihia 'oia 'e te 'uri.* He was bitten by the dog.
 'Ua 'ia hia tōna tāūpo'o. His hat was stolen.
 'I ta'iri hia na vau. I was whipped.
 'E ta'iri hia vau. I shall be whipped.

Hia has been considered best kept apart from the verb stem and not joined as a suffix, as adverbs may be placed between the stem and *hia* to describe manner. This construction will be explained in §85.

Hia is replaced by *-a* to indicate a recent past passive. Examples:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>rave</i> | to take | ' <i>amu</i> | to eat |
| <i>ravea</i> | taken (recent) | ' <i>amua</i> | eaten (recent) |
| <i>rave hia</i> | taken (general) | ' <i>amu hia</i> | eaten (general) |

'*Ua ravea te tāūpo'o 'e 'o Teri'i.*

The hat was taken by Terii.

At this point it should be noted that the agentive article in Tahitian has two forms, *'i* for inanimate agents and *'e* for animate agents.

Examples:

'*Ua hohonihia 'oia 'e te ma'o.*

He was bitten by a shark.

'*Ua horo'a hia te tao'a 'e te tamāroa iti.*

The gift was given by the small boy.

But: '*E haere au 'e ta'iri 'i te 'uri 'i te 'ama'a rā'au.*

I shall go and hit the dog with a stick.

With pronoun agents, the forms are as follows:

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| ' <i>e au</i> | by me | ' <i>e rāua</i> | by them (dl) |
| ' <i>e 'oe</i> | by you | ' <i>e tātou</i> | by us (pl. inc.) |
| ' <i>e ana</i> | by him | ' <i>e mātou</i> | by us (pl. exc.) |
| ' <i>e tāua</i> | by us (dl inc.) | ' <i>e 'outou</i> | by you (pl.) |
| ' <i>e māua</i> | by us (dl exc.) | ' <i>e rātou</i> | by them (pl.) |
| ' <i>e 'ōrua</i> | by you (dl) | | |

Example:

'*Ua tupa'i hia te 'uri 'e ana.*

The dog was hit by him.

(ii) *nā* + agent + verb + subject

This is the construction used when the emphasis rests on the agent, rather than on the action. Examples:

Nā te tavana 'i taparahi ha'apohe te ma'o.†

* Except when the final syllable of the verb is *-hi*, or sometimes *-i*, when the passive marker is *-a*; e.g. *vavahi* (to split), *vavahia* (split).

† 'I, the sign of the object, is often omitted in the past tense with this construction.

The shark was killed by the chief.

(Lit. by the chief killed the shark)

Nā te tamāroa iti 'i horo'a ātu 'i te tao'a.

The gift was given by the small boy.

The verb remains in the active form in this construction. When this emphatic construction is used, *'i* indicates all past tense, while *'e* indicates future and present tense.

(iii) verbs without *hia*

Certain verbs in Tahitian may not take the passive marker *hia*. They are as follows:

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>rava'i</i> | to be sufficient | <i>mā'e</i> | to be lifted |
| <i>nava'i</i> | | <i>mara'a</i> | to be raised |
| <i>noa'a</i> | to be obtained | <i>ti'a</i> | to be able |
| <i>roa'a</i> | | <i>nehenehe</i> | to be able |
| <i>ta'a</i> | to be certain | <i>hemo</i> | to be surpassed |
| <i>mo'e</i> | to be forgotten | <i>rē</i> | to be victorious |

The following sentences illustrate their usage. It will be observed that these verbs are unlike those seen so far in that they are mainly impersonal. Examples:

'*Ua nava'i te mā'a.*

There is enough food.

'*Ua noa'a tā tātou pia.*

We have got some beer.

'*Ua ta'a 'ia'u 'i te fa'ahoro 'i te pere'o'o-uira.*

I know how to drive a car.

'*Ua mo'e 'ia'u te titeti manureva.*

I have forgotten my plane-ticket.

'*Ua mā'e tā'u pūte pūha.*

I was able to lift my sack of copra.

'*Ua mara'a te moni 'ō te pūha.*

The price of copra has risen.

'*E ti'a 'ia'u 'ia tauturu 'ia 'oe.*

I can help you.

'*E nehenehe tā'u 'e tauturu 'ia 'oe.*

I can help you.

'*Ua hemo tō Teri'i va'a 'i tō Marama.*

Terii's boat has passed Marama's.

'*Ua rē 'ia Moana.*

Moana has won.

It is not necessary to study part (iii) of this section intensively at this stage. After Lesson 19 it will be clearer. It is better for the moment to practise using the passive forms given in parts (i) and (ii).

48. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'Ua tāmā'a vau.
2. 'Ua hina'aro 'oia 'i te hō'e afata.
3. 'E ta'i rātou.
4. Te haere nei 'ōrua 'i te 'oire.
5. Te horo'a ra 'oia 'i te tao'a.
6. Te inu ra rātou 'i te pia.
7. 'I tupa'i na te ta'ata 'i te hō'e pua'a.
8. Te hi'o ra te mau vahine 'i te miti.
9. 'E 'amu te ta'ata 'i te vi.
10. Te horo nei te mau tamāroa.
11. 'Ua tupa'i hia te honu 'e te mau feiā tāi'a.
12. 'Ua hohoni hia te ta'ata 'e te ma'o.
13. 'E tupa'i au 'i te 'uri 'i te 'ama'a rā'au.
14. 'Ua mā'iti hia 'oia 'ei mero nō te Apo'ora'a Rahi.
15. Nā'u 'i tunu 'i te ūfi.
16. Nā te pōti'i ra 'i tanu 'i te tiare.
17. Nā 'outou 'e tāpū 'i te vahie.
18. Te tanu hia nei te hō'e tumu ha'ari.
19. 'Ua 'amu hia te 'iore 'e te 'uri.
20. 'Ua tupa'i hia te 'uri 'e ana.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. I am eating a mango.
2. He was swimming yesterday.
3. My hat was stolen yesterday.
4. The girl was looked for by the boy.
5. I shall cut the wood tomorrow.
6. We two (inc.) shall swim.
7. They (pl.) were eating mangoes.
8. The dog bit my leg.
9. The chief died yesterday.
10. Yesterday I bought four books.
11. I like his dog.
12. The girl is looking at the sea.
13. The dog is asleep.
14. He went to the city.
15. You stole my book.

Lesson 9

THE CAUSATIVE VERB

49. Fa'a- or Ha'a-

In Tahitian there is a verb form, the causative, which is employed very frequently in conversation. The causative form means "to cause to be done", "to have something done". The prefixes used to form the causative are *fa'a-* or *ha'a-*.^{*} With a smaller number of verbs, listed at the end of this section, either *fa'a-* or *ha'a-* may be used as causative markers; but in the vast majority of verbs these prefixes are not interchangeable, and the correct marker must be learnt in each case, as indicated in the glossary. Examples of the causative:

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|---------------------|------------------------|
| <i>tupu</i> | to grow | <i>fa'atupu</i> | to make something grow |
| <i>'ite</i> | to know | <i>fa'a'ite</i> | to make known, explain |
| <i>ta'i</i> | to cry | <i>fa'ata'i</i> | to make someone cry |
| <i>maita'i</i> | good | <i>ha'amaita'i</i> | to do good |
| <i>'ino</i> | bad | <i>fa'a'ino</i> | to do evil |
| <i>'ahu</i> | clothes | <i>fa'a'ahu</i> | to clothe someone |
| <i>nehenehe</i> | beautiful | <i>fa'anehenehe</i> | to clean |

As was pointed out in §46(xi), there are really no such parts of speech as "verb", "noun", "adjective" in Tahitian, each part of speech being determined solely by the slot it fills and the function it performs in the sentence. It would therefore be better to speak of a "base" than of a "part of speech". It can be seen from the above that "verbs", "nouns", and "adjectives" may be used to form a causative verb form. Examples:

tae to arrive *fa'atae* to import

'Ua *fa'atae* 'oia 'i te mau pua'atoro.

He imported cattle.

nehenehe beautiful *fa'anehenehe* to clean

'E *fa'anehenehe* rātou 'i te piha.

They are going to clean the room.

* With causative verbs, there are two primary stresses, one on the prefix and one on the verb stem, as indicated above.

The following causative forms may take either *ha'a-* or *fa'a-** (all other verbs must always take the prefix prescribed in the glossary).

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>ha'apihā</i> | to cause to boil | <i>ha'apa'apa'a</i> | to roast, grill |
| <i>ha'apo'i</i> | to cover up | <i>ha'aputa</i> | to pierce |
| <i>ha'apoto</i> | to shorten | <i>ha'aputu</i> | to gather together |
| <i>ha'apu'ai</i> | to exert strength | <i>fa'a'afaro</i> | to straighten |
| <i>ha'apu'e</i> | to gather together | <i>fa'a'ati</i> | to close, accompany |
| <i>ha'apupu</i> | to class | <i>fa'afaito</i> | to weigh, make equal |
| <i>ha'apurara</i> | to scatter | <i>fa'afarerei</i> | to introduce |
| <i>fa'afatata</i> | to bring near | <i>fa'afariu</i> | to convert |
| <i>fa'aha'amā</i> | to make ashamed | <i>ha'amānina</i> | to make level |
| <i>fa'amahu</i> | to be patient | <i>ha'amaoro</i> | to delay |
| <i>fa'amata'u</i> | to terrify | <i>ha'amarari</i> | to disperse |
| <i>fa'arapu</i> | to stir | <i>ha'amarama- rama</i> | to enlighten |
| <i>ha'afaufau</i> | to debase | <i>ha'amatara</i> | to untie |
| <i>ha'afefe</i> | to bend | <i>ha'amau</i> | to establish |
| <i>ha'afifi</i> | to entangle | <i>ha'amaū'a</i> | to waste |
| <i>ha'afirifiri</i> | to curl | <i>ha'ama'ue</i> | to make fly |
| <i>ha'afiu</i> | to bore | <i>ha'amaiui</i> | to inflict pain |
| <i>ha'amahēu</i> | to discover | <i>ha'amaurūru</i> | to thank, please |
| <i>ha'amana</i> | to authorise | <i>ha'amenemene</i> | to make round |
| <i>ha'amani'i</i> | to spill | <i>ha'ami'omi'o</i> | to crumple |
| <i>ha'amo'e</i> | to forget, lose | <i>ha'apapū</i> | to level, assure |
| | | <i>ha'ape'ape'a</i> | to annoy |

50. *Tā-*

Tā- is another prefix forming the causative, but with the meaning "to put something to use". Examples:

| | | | |
|---------------|-------|-----------------|----------------------|
| <i>ūpo'o</i> | head | <i>tāūpo'o</i> | to put on one's head |
| <i>tihota</i> | sugar | <i>tātihota</i> | to sugar something |
| <i>paru</i> | bait | <i>tāparu</i> | to beg |

51. Causative and Passive

In §47(iii) we saw that certain verb roots are already passive in sense and cannot take the passive formative *hia*. There is another short list of verbs which can take the passive formative *hia*, but only after the causative prefixes have been applied. This is because they are basically passive in meaning. Examining the list will make this clearer:

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|----------------|
| <i>fati</i> | to be broken | <i>oti</i> | to be finished |
|-------------|--------------|------------|----------------|

* The more common form only is listed here.

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|---|
| <i>'ofati</i> | to break | <i>fa'aoti</i> | to finish |
| <i>matara</i> | to become untied open | <i>papū</i> | to be sure |
| <i>ha'amatara</i> | to untie | <i>ha'apapū</i> | to assure |
| <i>mau</i> | to be held fast | <i>pau</i> | to be consumed |
| <i>tāmau</i> | to hold, learn thoroughly | <i>ha'apau</i> | to consume |
| <i>maū'a</i> | to be wasted | <i>pohe</i> | to be dead |
| <i>ha'amaū'a</i> | to waste | <i>tupohe</i> | to kill, put out a light |
| <i>mo'e</i> | to be forgotten | <i>riro</i> | to become, to be taken possession of |
| <i>ha'amo'e</i> | to lose | <i>fa'ariro</i> | to accept |

Examples:

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| <i>'Ua fati te mau tumu ha'ari.</i> | The coconut trees are broken. |
| <i>'Ua 'ofati vau 'i te 'ama'a rā'au.</i> | I broke the branches. |
| <i>'Ua 'ofati hia te 'ama'a rā'au.</i> | The branches have been broken. |
| <i>'Ua matara te mau fare toa.</i> | The shops are open. |
| <i>'Ua ha'amatara 'ona 'i te taponā taura.</i> | He untied the knot in the rope. |
| <i>'Ua ha'amatara hia te 'opani.</i> | The door is ajar. |
| <i>'Ua mau maita'i te taura 'i te tā'amu.</i> | The rope has been well tied. |
| <i>'Ua tāmau maita'i 'o Heifara 'i tāna himene.</i> | Heifara has learnt her song well. |
| <i>'Ua tāmau hia te himene.</i> | The song has been learnt. |
| <i>'Ua maū'a noa te taimē.</i> | It is a waste of time. |
| <i>'Ua ha'amaū'a 'ona 'i te taimē.</i> | He has wasted his time. |
| <i>'Ua ha'amaū'a hia te taimē.</i> | Time has been wasted. |
| <i>'Ua mo'e 'ia'u.</i> | I have forgotten. |
| <i>'Ua ha'amo'e te tohora.</i> | The whale has submerged again. |
| <i>'Ua ha'amo'e hia te mau parau tahito.</i> | The old legends are forgotten. |
| <i>'Ua oti te poti 'i te hamani.</i> | The boat has been finished. |
| <i>'Ua fa'aoti te 'ohipa.</i> | The work is finished. |
| <i>'Ua fa'aoti hia te purera'a.</i> | The prayer has ended. |
| <i>'Ua papū 'ia'u.</i> | I am sure. |
| <i>'Ua ha'apapū 'oe.</i> | You have explained. |
| <i>'Ua ha'apapū hia te hora.</i> | The time has been set. |
| <i>'Ua pau te pape.</i> | The water is used up. |
| <i>'Ua ha'apau 'oia 'i te uaina.</i> | He drank all the wine. |
| <i>'Ua ha'apau hia te mā'a.</i> | The food has been consumed. |
| <i>'Ua pohe 'oia.</i> | He is dead. |
| <i>'Ua tupohe 'oia 'i te mōri.</i> | He put out the light. |
| <i>'Ua tupohe hia te mōri.</i> | The light has been put out. |

- 'Ua riro 'oia 'ei tavana. He has become the mayor.
 'Ua fa'ariro 'oia 'i tōna pere'o'o. He has sold his car.
 'Ua fa'ariro hia 'oia 'ei ta'ata Farāni. He has been made a French citizen.

52. Noun + hia

In Tahitian any common noun may become a passive impersonal verb, simply by the addition of *hia* to the noun itself. Examples:

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------|------------------|--------------------|
| <i>ta'ata</i> | man, person | <i>ta'atahia</i> | to become populous |
| <i>mā'a</i> | food | <i>mā'ahia</i> | to become fruitful |
| <i>mahāna</i> | sun | <i>mahānahia</i> | to become sunny |

Thus: 'E'ita 'e ta'atahia 'i te 'oire 'ananahi.

There will be nobody in town tomorrow.

53. Dual Forms of the Verb

When a movement or action is performed by two persons together, the form of some verbs is subject to partial reduplication, usually of the first syllable. Examples:

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>horo</i> | to run | <i>hohoro</i> | to run (two together) |
| <i>haere</i> | to go | <i>hahaere</i> | to go (two together) |
| <i>reva</i> | to leave | <i>rereva</i> | to leave (two together) |
| <i>parau</i> | to converse | <i>paraparau</i> | to converse (two together) |
| <i>ta'oto</i> | to sleep | <i>ta'o'oto</i> | to sleep (two together) |

54. Intensified Verbs

When an action or movement is repeated several times or very often, the form of several verbs is subject to complete or almost complete reduplication. Thus:

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| <i>parau</i> | to converse | <i>parauparau</i> | to talk a lot |
| <i>hi'o</i> | to look at | <i>hi'ohi'o</i> | to stare at |
| <i>hoe</i> | to row | <i>hoehoe</i> | to row here and there |
| <i>pātia</i> | to prick, spear | <i>pātiatia</i> | to prick several times |
| <i>rave</i> | to do, make | <i>raverave</i> | to manipulate |
| <i>horōi</i> | to wash | <i>horohorōi</i> | to wash repeatedly |

When a statement or decision is stressed, *ia* immediately following the verb acts as an intensifying particle. Examples:

'E ta'oto ia te mau ta'ata 'i uta 'i tēra fa'a.

The people will sleep at the bottom of the valley.

'E riro ia te 'oire nō Pape'ete 'ei māta'ita'ira'a nā te mau feiā rātere.

Papeete is becoming the delight of the tourists.

55. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

- 'Ua fa'atupu 'oia 'i te vi.
- 'Ua ha'aparari rātou 'i te mau hapaina.
- 'E fa'atae mai vau 'i tā'u tauiha'a.
- 'Ua ha'amani 'i 'oe 'i te ū.
- 'Ua fa'atupa 'i 'oia 'i te hō'e pua'a.
- Te hi'ohi'o ra rātou 'i te mau pōti'i.
- 'E hahaere rāua 'i te mātete.
- 'Ua rereva ātu tau na ta'ata.
- Te parauparau nei te mau pōti'i.
- 'I ta'o'oto na māua.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

- All the dry coconuts are gathered up.
- She will clean the room.
- It is covered up.
- I shall conclude our conversation.
- The net is closed off.
- I shall explain to him.
- A feast was organised.
- Cattle are imported to Tahiti.
- The men paddled about.
- He stared at the fish.

Lesson 10

THE NEGATIVE

The negative particles in Tahitian are as follows:

| | |
|--------|--------|
| 'aita | 'e'ore |
| 'aore | 'e'ere |
| 'e'ita | |

56. 'Aita and 'Aore

'Aita or 'aore are used to indicate negation with present or past tense. The negative particle always precedes the subject and the verb. With a negative sentence the word order is as follows:

negative particle + subject + verb + object

Examples:

'Aita te ta'ata 'i hohonu hia 'e te 'uri.

The man was not bitten by the dog.

'Aita vau 'i rave 'i te 'ohipa 'i teie po'ipo'i.

I did not work this morning.

'Aita vau 'e tāmā'a nei.*

I am not eating.

'Aita tā'u vahie 'i oti 'i te tāpū.

I have not finished cutting the wood.

'Aita vau 'e 'amu ra.

I was not eating.

'Aore may be used instead of 'aita, and has a more emphatic quality.

Example:

'Aore au 'i tupa'i 'iāna. I did not hit him.

57. 'E'ita and 'E'ore

'E'ita or 'e'ore are used to indicate negation with future tense. The word order remains the same as for the present and past negative.

Examples:

'E'ita vau 'e haere 'i teie nei 'i te mātete.

I shall not go to the market now.

* Note that 'e replaces the *te* of the present affirmative construction.

'E'ita te ta'ata 'e hohonu hia 'e te 'uri.

The man will not be bitten by the dog.

'E'ore has a stronger force than 'e'ita, in the same way that 'aore, is more emphatic than 'aita. Example:

'E'ore roa rātou 'e tae mai. They will never arrive.

58. 'E'ere

'E'ere is used in negative statements such as "there is not", "it is not". This type of negation is used mainly with sentences of the type not containing a verb in Tahitian. A few examples will make it clear:

'E'ere 'i te mea 'ohie. It is not easy.

(Lit. it is not a thing easy)

'E'ere 'oia 'i te mea puai. He is not strong.

(Lit. he is not a thing strong)

'E'ere is also used to negate the verbal sentence type explained in §47(ii). Thus:

'E'ere nā'u 'i rave 'i te puta. It was not I who took the book.

A detailed explanation of the uses of 'e'ere with non-verbal sentence types will be found in §§73 and 74.

59. Negative + Roa

Roa, immediately following any of the negative particles, corresponds to "never". Examples:

'Aita roa vau 'i 'ite. I have never seen it.

'E'ore roa rātou 'e tae mai. They will never arrive.

60. 'Aiteā and 'Aore ā

'Aiteā and 'aore ā correspond to the English "not yet", and occupy the same position in the sentence as 'aita. Examples:

'Aiteā 'ona 'i haere mai. He has not yet come.

'Aore ā 'ona 'i 'ite 'i te

miti.

He has not seen the sea yet.

61. 'Ore

'Ore is often placed after the verb, and corresponds to the English "without". Example:

'E rave tāua 'i te 'ohipa mai te fa'aea 'ore.

We shall work without stopping.

(Lit. will do we the work with the stop without)

'Ore is also used as a negative verb in such sentences as:

Nō te aha 'oe 'e 'ore ai 'e 'āu?

Why don't you swim?

'Ia 'ore 'oia 'e 'amu fa'ahou 'i te mau ta'ata.

Lest he eat men again.

Further reference to 'ore as a verb is made in §98.

Some adverbs and adjectives take on a negative sense when followed by 'ore. Examples:

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------|----------------------|-------------|
| <i>pinepine</i> | often | <i>pinepine 'ore</i> | rarely |
| <i>tu'utu'u</i> | slack | <i>tu'utu'u 'ore</i> | continually |
| <i>nehenehe</i> | possible | <i>nehenehe 'ore</i> | impossible |

62. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'Aita te pōti'i 'i pa'imi hia 'e te taure'are'a tāne. 2. 'Aita tōna tāupo'o 'i 'ia hia 'inanahi ra. 3. 'Aita 'o Moana 'e ta'oto ra. 4. 'Aita te fenua 'i haumi. 5. 'Aita vau 'e tai'o nei. 6. 'E'ore vau 'e tāpū 'i te vahie. 7. 'E'ore 'oe 'e inu 'i te uaina. 8. 'E'ita 'oia 'e 'āu. 9. 'E'ita rātou 'e haere 'i te mātete. 10. 'Aore vau 'e tāmā'a nei.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. I shall not go to the market. 2. The gift was not given to the chief. 3. The men did not arrive. 4. I am not eating. 5. You (pl.) did not eat. 6. The dog will not bite the man. 7. Peu is not swimming. 8. I shall not eat the yams. 9. The woman did not plant the coconuts. 10. They (pl.) are not children.

Lesson 11

VERBAL SENTENCE TYPES

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>te tao'a</i> | the present | <i>reva</i> | to leave |
| <i>te tavana</i> | the mayor | <i>tae</i> | to arrive |
| <i>te tavana rahi</i> | the Governor | <i>fa'ari'i</i> | to receive |
| <i>te mata'eina'a</i> | the district | <i>fa'atupu</i> | to organise |
| <i>te tāmā'ara'a</i> | the feast | <i>fa'a'ite</i> | to explain |
| <i>te pae moana</i> | the edge of the lagoon | <i>tu'u</i> | to put down |
| | | <i>mana'o</i> | to think |
| <i>te fare toa</i> | the shop | <i>tupu</i> | to exist, grow |
| <i>te piripou</i> | the trousers | <i>ti'i</i> | to get, pick |
| <i>ūa</i> | to rain | <i>hina'aro</i> | to want |
| <i>patiri</i> | to thunder | <i>rave</i> | to do, make, take |
| <i>vai</i> | to be, exist | <i>maita'i</i> | well |

This lesson constitutes a revision of all the lessons so far, with emphasis on practice in sentence formation. Each verbal sentence type will be expressed in terms of a formula, since word order in the Tahitian sentence is unlike that of English or French.

63. Intransitive

When the verb is intransitive, the order is as follows:

verb + subject

Examples:

'Ua haere au 'i te mātete. I went to the market.
'Ua tae mai vau 'i te hora piti. I arrived at two o'clock.

64. Transitive

With transitive verbs, the word order is as follows:

verb + subject + direct object

Examples:

'E tupa'i vau 'i te hō'e pua'a. I shall kill a pig.
'Ua 'amu vau 'i te fē'i. I ate a red banana.

65. Dual Object

When a second object or indirect object is expressed, it follows the first object. Thus:

verb + subject + object + indirect object

Examples:

'*Ua horo'a ātu vau 'i te hō'e tao'a 'iāna.*

I gave him a present.

'*Ua pāpa'i vau 'i te rata 'iāna 'inanahi ra.*

I wrote him a letter yesterday.

66. Attributive

When an attributive sentence is constructed, the attribute follows the direct object and is preceded by the particle 'ei, the attributive marker.

Example:

'*Ua mā'iti rātou 'iāna 'ei tavana.*

They elected him mayor.

67. Passive

With a passive verb the word order is as follows:

verb + subject + agent

Examples:

'*Ua hohoni hia 'oia 'e te 'uri.* He was bitten by the dog.

'*Ua tāpe'a hia 'oia 'e te muto'i.* He was arrested by the police.

68. Passive Indirect Object

When a passive verb has an indirect object, the word order is:

verb + subject + indirect object + agent

Example:

'*Ua horo'a hia te tao'a 'i te tamaiti 'e te tavana.*

The present was given to the boy by the chief.

With the passive attributive (cf. §66), the word order is:

verb + subject + attribute

Example:

'*Ua mā'iti hia 'oia 'ei tavana.* He was elected mayor.

69. Impersonal Verbs

There exists a series of impersonal verbs in Tahitian, used with reference to the weather. Examples:

| | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| ' <i>e ūa</i> | it will rain |
| <i>te ūa nei</i> | it is raining |
| ' <i>e patiri</i> | it thunders |

These verbs follow the pattern set out for the verbs above, with the exception that the subject is not expressed.

70. Vai

This verb means "to be present, to exist, to be in a certain state". It follows the regular pattern of the verbs discussed above, but does not occur in the passive form. Examples:

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------|-----------------------|----------|
| <i>te vai nei au</i> | I am | <i>te vai ra vau</i> | I was |
| <i>te vai nei 'oe</i> | you are | <i>te vai ra 'oe</i> | you were |
| <i>te vai nei 'oia</i> | he is | <i>te vai ra 'oia</i> | he was |

Te vai ra te hō'e ta'ata tei pāpa'i 'i taua 'a'amu ra.
There was a man who wrote that story.

This verb, however, must NOT be used to translate such sentences as "I am sick", "he is well", etc., but must be used with sentences of the type "there was a man . . ." Sentence types such as "I am well" are non-verbal in Tahitian, and will be explained in §73.

71. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. '*Ua reva ātu māua.* 2. *Te vai nei te mau motu Tuamotu.* 3. '*E tae 'oia 'i te mata'eina'a nō Pa'ea.* 4. '*E haere ātu 'oia 'i Mataiea.* 5. '*Ua fa'ari'i hia 'oia 'e te ari'i vahine.* 6. '*Ua fa'atupu hia te hō'e tāmā'ara'a.* 7. '*E fa'a'ite vau 'iāna 'i te huru nō te 'ohipa.* 8. '*E tu'u rātou 'i te 'upe'a.* 9. '*E haere rātou 'i te pae moana.* 10. *Te mana'o nei māua 'e haere ātu 'i te mau motu.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. You two will eat well today. 2. All the men will go. 3. They (pl.) went in the morning. 4. They (pl.) will eat. 5. There are flowers in all the islands. 6. That flower does not grow in all places. 7. You (pl.) picked that flower. 8. We (pl. inc.) are going into a shop. 9. I want a pair of trousers. 10. I will take it.

Lesson 12

NON-VERBAL SENTENCES

In Tahitian there exists a series of sentences in which there is no verb. This phenomenon is common in Oceanic languages, but quite strange to speakers of European languages. These sentences are extremely common in everyday speech, and warrant particular attention and study on the part of the student.

72. It is, There is

The first type of non-verbal sentence corresponds to the English sentence type, "it is/there is/there are".

Note: Throughout this grammar Tahitian is explained in its own terms, but in the case of Tahitian non-verbal sentences an explanation in terms of English will clarify their structure and usage.

(i) This type of sentence consists of the particle 'e (it is/there is), a noun, and a locative/temporal phrase. Examples:

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 'E naonao tō 'onei. | There are mosquitoes here. |
| 'E ta'urua tō 'ananahi. | There is a feast tomorrow. |
| 'E i'a tō roto 'i te 'upe'a. | There are fish in the net. |

It can be seen from these examples that the first part consists of 'e + noun, while the second consists of tō + locative/temporal phrase. The first part alone constitutes a sentence in response to a question.

Example:

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 'E aha i'era? | What is that? |
| 'E mā'a tahiti. | It is Tahitian food. |

'E changes to 'o when the subject is a pronoun or proper noun.

Example:

| | |
|------------|--------------|
| 'O vau. | It is I. |
| 'O Teri'i. | It is Terii. |

With this first type of non-verbal sentence the negative is formed by placing the negative particle 'aita before the affirmative sentence.

Thus:

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 'Aita 'e naonao tō 'onei. | There are no mosquitoes here. |
| 'Aita 'e ta'urua tō 'ananahi. | There is no feast tomorrow. |

Instead of simply 'aita, there is a series of negatives for this sentence type which will be listed in order of increasing intensity:

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 'Aore re'a 'e ta'ata. | There is hardly anyone. |
| 'Aita 'e ta'ata. | There is no-one. |
| 'Aita roa 'e ta'ata. | There is no-one. |
| 'Aore 'e ta'ata. | There is no-one. |
| 'Aore roa 'e ta'ata. | There is no-one (absolute). |

(ii) A sub-type of the sentence construction explained above consists of:

'e + numeral adjective + noun

This structure corresponds to such sentences as "there are many. . . ." The numeral adjective may be either *raverahi* or *raverau*. Examples:

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 'E raverahi mau rātere. | There are many tourists. |
| 'E raverau mau ta'ata. | There are many men. |

Raverahi indicates many of the same kind, while *raverau* indicates many of different kinds.

When a dependent clause follows this type of sentence, the definite article *te* is sometimes inserted. Example:

'e raverahi te mau rātere . . . there are many tourists who . . .

73. Identificational

The second type of non-verbal sentence in Tahitian corresponds to the English type, "he is strong", or "the ground is wet". In other words, the first part of the utterance is composed of a noun qualified by an adjective, and the second is filled by a noun or pronoun. This may be summarised in the formula:

$$\left[\text{noun} + \text{adjective} \right] + \left[\begin{array}{c} \text{noun} \\ \text{pronoun} \end{array} \right]$$

Examples:

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 'E mea marō te ha'ari.* | The coconuts are dry. |
| (Lit. is a thing dry the coconuts) | |
| 'E mea pa'ari te ūfi. | The yams are hard. |
| (Lit. is a thing hard the yams) | |
| 'E ta'ata puai 'oia. | He is strong. |
| (Lit. is a man strong he) | |

* This contrasts with:

'ua marō te ha'ari

which suggests that the coconuts have become dry, but were previously wet.

'E mea āu nā'u tēra hei-pūpū.

I like that shell necklace.

As with the first type of non-verbal sentence, the first part alone may constitute a sentence in response to a question, or when the context is known. Example:

'E mea 'ohie. It is easy.

The negative of this second non-verbal sentence type may take two forms:

(i) 'e 'ere

Examples:

'E 'ere 'i te mea 'ohie. It is not easy.

'E 'ere 'oia 'i te mea puai. He is not strong.

(ii) 'aita

With any sentence of the form 'e mea, etc., the adjective may become a verb in the negative. Examples:

'e mea haumi te fenua
the ground is wet

↓

'aita te fenua 'i haumi
'e mea pa'ari te ūfi
the yams are hard

↓

'aita te ūfi 'i pa'ari

74. Equational

The third type of non-verbal sentence in Tahitian is equational, of the type "that is a coconut tree", "that is my father". It may take two forms, as follows:

(i) 'e + noun + demonstrative

Example:

'E tumu ha'ari tēra. That is a coconut tree.
(Lit. is a coconut tree that)

(ii) demonstrative + noun

Example:

Tēra tō'u metua tāne. That is my father.
(Lit. that my father)

The negative of this sentence type is the same as for §73. Example:

'E 'ere tēra ta'ata tō'u metua tāne.
That man is not my father.

75. To have

(i) The last type of non-verbal sentence translates the English "to have". It is composed of:

'e + noun + possessive pronoun

Examples:

'E 'ava'ava tā'u. I have some cigarettes.
(Lit. are cigarettes mine)

'E 'uri tā rātou. They have a dog.

'E ūpo'o tō'u. I have a head.

'E fare nehenehe tō tēra ta'ata. That man has a nice house.

Note: The possessive pronouns are identical to the possessive adjectives listed in §37.

(ii) When possession is stressed, such as in the reply to the question, "whose are the cigarettes?" (those are *my* cigarettes), the word order explained for this last non-verbal sentence is reversed, *nā* or *nō* replacing the *tā* or *tō*.^{*} Examples:

Nā'u tēra 'ava'ava. Those are my cigarettes.

(Lit. for me those cigarettes)

Nō'u tēra va'a.

That is my outrigger canoe.

When possession is emphasised, as above, nouns normally taking the possessive particle *tā*, *nā*, *'ā*, may change to *tō*, *nō*, *'ō*, in order to stress absolute ownership. Example:

Nā vai tēra uāti? Whose is that watch?

Nō'u tēra uāti. That is my watch.

(iii) When a numeral occurs with "to have", as in "I have two pigs", the word order is:

'e + numeral + possessed noun

Example:

'E piti tāna pua'a. He has two pigs.
(Lit. is two his pigs)

(iv) The negative of the basic sentence type described in §75(i) is formed by placing 'aita before the possessive pronoun. The following formula will make it clear:

['aita] + possessive pronoun + 'e + noun

* The *nō*, *nā* form has a benefactive overtone, absent from the *tō*, *tā* form.

Examples:

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>'Aita tā'u 'e vahine.</i> | I have no wife. (Lit. not mine is wife) |
| <i>'Aita tā'u 'e 'ava'ava.</i> | I have no cigarettes. |
| <i>'Aita tō tēra ta'ata 'e fare nehenehe.</i> | That man has not got a nice house. |

76. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *'E mea haumi te fenua.* 2. *Teie tā'u vahine fa'aipoipo.* 3. *'E piti tā'u pua'a.* 4. *'E 'uri maita'i tā rātou.* 5. *Tēra tōna fare.* 6. *'Aita te ūfi 'i pa'ari.* 7. *'E mea rahi roa tēra ta'ata.* 8. *'E mea nehenehe tēra pōti'i.* 9. *'E 'ere 'i te mea iti.* 10. *'Aita tā māua 'e moni.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. The road is long. 2. It is not long. 3. There are pawpaws here.
4. There is a feast tomorrow. 5. The chief has some pigs. 6. I have
no house. 7. He has two hands. 8. The orange is very good.
9. They (pl.) have no money. 10. He is not strong.

Lesson 13

TIME AND FREQUENCY

By this time the student will be able to conduct a simple conversation in Tahitian, and before we move from statement sentences to other types, such as interrogative and dependent sentences, we will examine phrases, such as time and location, which may be included in any sentence type, be it statement or otherwise.

77. Time Phrases

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>'inanahi</i> | yesterday |
| <i>'inanahi ātura</i> | the day before yesterday |
| <i>'i napō ra</i> | last night |
| <i>'i teie mahāna</i> | today |
| <i>'i teie po'ipo'i</i> | this morning (6–10 a.m.) |
| <i>'i teie āvatea</i> | this morning (10 a.m.–noon) |
| <i>'i teie āhiāhi</i> | this afternoon (noon–6 p.m.) |
| <i>'i teie pō</i> | tonight (6 p.m.–midnight) |
| <i>'i teie ru'i</i> | tonight (midnight–6 a.m.) |
| <i>'i teie a'ahiāta</i> | tomorrow |
| <i>'ananahi</i> | the day after tomorrow |
| <i>'ananahi ātu</i> | tomorrow morning |
| <i>'ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i</i> | tomorrow night |
| <i>'ananahi 'ia pō</i> | |
| <i>'a napō</i> | |
| <i>'i teie nei</i> | now |
| <i>'i teie taime</i> | |
| <i>hou 'a</i> | before (plus verb) |
| <i>nā mua ā'e</i> | before, first |
| <i>nā mua</i> | before (plus noun) |
| <i>nā mua ā'e 'i</i> | |
| <i>'i reira</i> | then, at that time |
| <i>'i te reira taime</i> | |
| <i>ihora</i> | then |
| <i>ātura</i> | |
| <i>'i muri iho</i> | then, after that |
| <i>ā'e ra</i> | then, thereupon |

| | |
|------------------------|----------|
| <i>mai te mahāna</i> | since |
| <i>'e tae noa ātu</i> | until |
| <i>'i muta'a ihora</i> | formerly |
| <i>fatata</i> | soon |

The time phrase or adverb is usually placed either at the beginning or at the end of the clause or sentence. Examples:

'Ananahi 'e haere ai vau 'e 'āu.

Tomorrow I shall go swimming.

'E reva ātu vau 'i teie pō.

I shall leave tonight.

Hou 'a tupu ai teie 'oro'a rahi

Before this big celebration takes place

'E nehenehe tā 'oe 'e rave nā mua.

You may take some first.

Nā mua ā'e 'i te reira, te rave ra 'oia 'i te 'ohipa fa'a'apu.

Before that, he was a farmer.

'I reira tō'u farereira'a 'iāna.

It was then that I met him.

'Ua haere ihora 'oia 'e pīpī 'i te tiare.

Then he went and watered the flowers.

'Ua tāpū ātura 'oia 'i te vahie.

Then he cut the wood.

'I muri iho, 'ua pohe 'oia.

After that, he died.

'Ua ti'a ā'e ra 'oia 'i ni'a.

Thereupon he stood up.

Mai te mahāna 'i reva ātu ai 'oe, 'aita te fare 'i tau.

Since you left, the house has not changed.

Mai te hora piti 'e tae noa ātu 'i te hora pae.

From two until five o'clock.

'I muta'a ihora 'aita te mau feiā ma'ohi 'e 'amu 'i te mā'a popa'a.

Formerly the Polynesians did not eat European food.

Fatata, "soon", has a verbal construction unlike the other time phrases, as follows:

'Ua fatata te taimē 'e parauparau ai vau 'i te reo Tahiti.

I will soon speak Tahitian.

(Lit. is near the time will speak I Tahitian)

78. Frequency Phrases

Related to time phrases are adverbs of frequency, which do not usually occupy the same position in the sentence as the time phrases listed above. Some common frequency expressions are:

| | |
|-----------------|-------|
| <i>pinepine</i> | often |
|-----------------|-------|

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>noa, noa ra</i> | always, still, again |
| <i>ēna</i> | already (distant) |
| <i>ā'e nei</i> | already (recent) |
| <i>ā</i> | still |
| <i>fa'ahou</i> | again, once more |
| <i>'i te tahi mau taimē</i> | from time to time |

Adverbs of frequency always follow immediately the verb stem to which they refer. Examples:

'E haere pinepine mai au 'i 'onei.

I come here often.

'E haere pinepine au 'i te 'oire.

I often go to town.

Te ta'oto noa ra 'oia.

He is still asleep.

'Ua reva ēna 'oia.

He has already left.

'Ua 'amu ā'e nei au.

I have already eaten.

'E hina'aro ā 'oe 'i te 'ava'ava?

Do you want another cigarette?

'E ho'i fa'ahou mai ā 'oe?

Will you come back again?

'I te tahi mau taimē 'e

He goes swimming from time

haere 'oia 'e 'āu.

to time.

79. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *'Inanahi ātura 'ua haere au 'e tāi'a.* 2. *'I teie po'ipo'i 'ua ta'i au.*
3. *'I teie āhiāhi 'e haere tātou 'e ho'o mai 'i te farāoa.* 4. *'Ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i 'e haere tāua 'e rave 'i te 'ohipa.* 5. *'I teie pō 'e ta'oto vau 'i te fare.* 6. *'Ananahi 'e ho'o mai vau 'i te pere'o'o.* 7. *'Ua ta'i pinepine te tamāhine.* 8. *Te 'amu noa ra 'o Teri'i.* 9. *'Ua horo'a ātu 'oia 'i te puta 'inanahi ra.* 10. *'Ua 'ite vau 'i te pōti'i 'inanahi ātura.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. I saw you yesterday.
2. The dog bit the boy today.
3. Yesterday my hat was stolen.
4. Tomorrow I shall write a letter.
5. We (pl. inc.) will soon arrive in Tahiti.
6. Tomorrow morning they (pl.) are going fishing.
7. Yesterday the dog bit my leg.
8. This afternoon we (pl. inc.) shall go to town.
9. Tonight we (pl. inc.) will eat Peū's pig.
10. Yesterday I saw some beautiful flowers.

Lesson 14

LOCATION AND DIRECTION

80. Location

In Tahitian there is a series of locational adverb phrases, as follows:

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>'i raro ā'e</i> | under |
| <i>'i raro</i> | low down |
| <i>nā raro</i> | low, low down |
| <i>'i ni'a ā'e</i> | above |
| <i>nā ni'a ā'e</i> | above |
| <i>'i ni'a iho</i> | on, up on |
| <i>'i piha'i iho</i> | beside |
| <i>'i roto</i> | in, into, inside |
| <i>nā roto</i> | from in, from inside |
| <i>'i ropu</i> | in the middle |
| <i>'i rotopu</i> | among |
| <i>nā ropu</i> | between |
| <i>'i rapae</i> | outside |
| <i>'i muri mai</i> | behind, at the back of |
| <i>nā muri mai</i> | behind |
| <i>'i mua</i> | to the front |
| <i>'i mua mai</i> | in front of, at the front |
| <i>nā mua mai</i> | in front of |
| <i>'i 'onei</i> | here |
| <i>'e tae noa ātu</i> | as far as |
| <i>'e 'ati noa ā'e</i> | around |
| <i>mai</i> | from |
| <i>nō</i> | from |
| <i>'i, 'ei, tei</i> | in, at, to |

There are two positions in the sentence in which the location adverb phrases normally occur.

(i) With non-verbal sentences, the location phrase is often placed at the beginning of the sentence; observe that *'i* becomes *tei* in this position. Examples:

Tei raro ā'e te 'uri 'i te 'amura'amā'a.
The dog is under the table.

Tei raro te mā'a ha'ari.

The coconuts are down (on the ground).

Tei ni'a ā'e te manureva 'i te 'oire.

The aeroplane is above the town.

Tei ni'a iho te puta 'i te 'amura'amā'a.

The book is on the table.

Tei piha'i iho te parahira'a 'i te 'amura'amā'a.

The chair is beside the table.

Tei roto te i'a 'i te 'upe'a.

The fish is in the net.

Tei ropu te pahī 'i te āva.

The steamer is in the middle of the passage.

Tei rotopu te tavana 'i te hui ra'atira.

The chief is among the people.

Tei rapae te mau pe'ue.

The mats are outside.

Tei muri mai te tumu 'uru 'i te fare.

The breadfruit tree is behind the house.

Tei mua mai te pere'o'o uira 'i te fare.

The car is in front of the house.

Tei 'onei te mau pōti 'i purotu.

The beautiful girls are here.

Tei te fare te mau manihini.

The guests are at the house.

Tei Pape'ete 'oia 'inanahi.

He was in Papeete yesterday.

But: *'Ei Pape'ete 'oia 'ananahi.*

He will be in Papeete tomorrow.

Note that *tei* is replaced by *'ei* when future tense is indicated.

With the type of stative sentence, "there is a . . .", as explained in §72, the pattern there outlined is followed. Example:

'E i'a tō roto 'i te miti.

There is a fish in the water.

(ii) With verbal sentence types, the adverbial location phrase is normally found after the verb. As the location adverb phrases occur often in conversation, each of the phrases is exemplified in verbal as well as non-verbal sentences, as follows:

'Ua ōri haere 'oia 'i raro ā'e 'i te tumu ha'ari.

He walked beneath the coconut palms.

'Ua rere te manureva nā raro roa.

The aeroplane flew very low.

'Ua rere te manureva nā ni'a 'i te 'oire.

The aeroplane flew over the town.

'E pa'uma 'oia 'i ni'a iho 'i te tumu rā'au.

He will climb up the tree.

'Ua parahi 'oia 'i piha'i iho 'ia'u.

He sat beside me.

'Ua taora vau 'i te popo 'i roto 'i te miti.

I threw the ball into the sea.

'Ua hitimahuta vau nā roto 'i tā'u moemoea.

I woke with a start from my dream.

'E haere te mau ta'ata 'i ropu 'i te miti nā ni'a 'i tō ratōu va'a.

The men go out into the middle of the water in their canoes

'Ua ōri haere 'oia 'i rotopu 'i te hui ra'atira.

He walked among the people.

'Ua haere 'oia nā ropu 'i te mau tumu rā'au.

He walked between the trees.

'Ua tatara 'oia 'i tōna mau 'ahu 'i rapae 'i te afata.

He took his clothes out of the box.

'Ua vaiho vau 'i te tipi 'i muri mai 'i te fare.

I put the knife behind the house.

'Ua 'utaru vau nā muri mai 'i te fare.

I weeded behind the house.

A hi'o 'i mua!

Look to the front!

'Ua tāpū 'ona 'i te tumu rā'au 'i mua mai 'i te fare.

He cut down the tree in front of the house.

'Ua tanu 'oia 'i te tiare nā mua mai 'i te fare.

She planted flowers in front of the house.

'Ua haere mai 'oia 'i 'onei 'inanahi.

He came here yesterday.

'Ua 'āu 'ona mai Pape'ete 'e tae ātu 'i Mo'orea.

He swam from Papeete to Moorea.

'Ua haere 'oia 'e 'ati noa ā'e te fare.

He went around the house.

'Ua tae mai 'ona mai te fenua Farāni mai.

He has come from France.

'E raverahi mau rātere nō te fenua Farāni.

There are many tourists from France.

In verbal sentence types, 'i alone corresponds to the English "at, in, to". Examples:

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| 'i Tahiti | to, in Tahiti | 'i te fare | to, at the house |
| 'i Farāni | to, in France | 'i ō Teri'i | to, at Teri's place |
| 'i te 'oire | to, in town | 'i ō Peu | to, at Peu's place |
| 'i te pae tahatai | to, at the beach | | |

81. Direction

There are two series of directionals in Tahitian. The first series is as follows:

| | |
|-----|-----------------------|
| mai | towards the speaker |
| ātu | away from the speaker |
| ai | movement |

Every verb of motion must be accompanied by one of the directional particles, *mai* or *ātu*, if the verb refers to a person as direct or indirect object. The following formula should be borne in mind during the explanation of their exact functions:

$$+ \text{verb} \pm \left[\begin{array}{l} \text{mai} \\ \text{ātu} \end{array} \right] \pm \text{ai}$$

(a) Directional Unexpressed. First let us take a sentence where there is no reference to person as object or indirect object. Example:

'E haere vau 'i te 'oire.

I shall go to town.

Here none of the directionals is used, because there is no object person reference.

(b) *Ātu*. This word indicates movement away from the speaker or principal object of the sentence towards someone else. Examples:

'E horo'a ātu vau 'ia 'oe 'i te tao'a.

I shall give you a present.

'E parau ātu 'oe 'ia rātou.

You will speak to them.

(c) *Mai*. *Mai* indicates movement towards the speaker or focal point of the sentence by another person or object. Examples:

'E parau mai 'oe 'ia'u.

You will speak to me.

'E horo'a mai 'oia 'i te tao'a 'ia'u.

He will give me a present.

'Ua reva mai te pahī.

The boat has left (to come towards the speaker).

Mai may also be used to indicate movement towards the focal point of the sentence, although away from the speaker, especially with reciprocal actions of the following type:

Let us suppose that two people are talking and that the first person has said.

'E pāpa'i ātu vau 'ia 'oe 'i te rata.

I shall write you a letter.

In reply to this, the second person might say, "And I shall write *you* a letter too", in Tahitian:

'E pāpa'i mai vau 'ia 'oe 'i te rata.

And I shall write *you* a letter.

In such a case, the focus or principal object of the second sentence is "*you*", thus requiring *mai* rather than *ātu*, indicating movement towards the focal point rather than away from the speaker.

(d) *Ai*. A directional indicating movement of any type or movement towards a consequence, *ai* is used when the verb itself is preceded by any adverbial phrase denoting present or future time, location, or situation, without reference to person.* Examples:

'I te hora pae 'e haere ai vau 'i te 'oire.

At five o'clock I shall go to town.

When there is also person reference, as in (b) and (c) above, then *mai ai* or *ātu ai* are used. Examples:

'I te hora piti 'e horo'a mai ai 'oia 'i te tao'a 'ia'u.

At two o'clock he will give me a present.

'I te hora piti 'e horo'a ātu ai vau 'i te tao'a 'ia rātou.

At two o'clock I shall give them a present.

The second series of directionals in Tahitian is as follows:

| | |
|------------|----------------------|
| <i>nei</i> | near the speaker |
| <i>na</i> | near the addressee |
| <i>ra</i> | far from the speaker |

This series of directionals applies to nouns, rather than to verbs.

(e) *Nei*. This indicates that the object is near the speaker, with overtones of present time. Example:

A rave 'i te tipi nei! Take this knife!

(f) *Na*. *Na* indicates that the object is near the addressee in space and time. Example:

'Ua fa'aea 'outou 'i Tahiti na. You stayed in Tahiti.

Na is also used in conjunction with the imperative. Thus:

A hi'o na! Look!

(g) *Ra*. This indicates an object far from the speaker in space and time. Examples:

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>'Ua oti te fare ra.</i> | The house is finished. |
| <i>'i te matamua ra</i> | in the beginning |

It can be seen that *nei*, *na*, and *ra* are used as tense formatives, as was seen in §46. However, they may also be used with verbs, when

* It is also used with interrogatives; see §§98-100.

the idea of space rather than time is uppermost in the mind of the speaker. Thus, instead of:

| | | |
|---------------|------------------------|----------------|
| | <i>te 'amu nei au</i> | I am eating |
| | <i>te 'amu nei 'oe</i> | you are eating |
| one may have: | <i>te 'amu nei au</i> | I am eating |
| | <i>te 'amu na 'oe</i> | you are eating |
| | <i>te 'amu ra 'oia</i> | he is eating |

In this case, the relationship in space is the same as that for the usage of *nei*, *na*, and *ra* with nouns, as explained above.

Two other directionals in common use are: *'i uta*, towards the interior, towards the land, and *'i tai*, towards the sea. Examples:

'E ta'oto te mau ta'ata 'i uta 'i te fa'a.

The men will sleep at the bottom of the valley.

'Ua painu te mau mā'a ha'ari 'i tai.

The coconuts drifted towards the open sea.

82. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *Tei ni'a iho te hapaina 'i te 'amura'amā'a.* 2. *Tei raro ā'e te mōhina uaina i te 'amura'amā'a.* 3. *'E haere vau 'i te 'oire.* 4. *'Ua haere rātou 'i ō Teri'i.* 5. *'Ua haere mai 'oia.* 6. *'E reva ātu vau.* 7. *'I teie mahāna 'e haere ai vau 'i te 'oire.* 8. *'I te hora piti 'e haere mai ai rātou.* 9. *'Ua rave 'oia 'i te 'ohipa 'ā taua ta'ata ra.* 10. *A inu 'i te pape nei.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. The fish is in the water. 2. There are no fish in the water. 3. The dog is in front of the house. 4. He is in the tree. 5. The man is behind the house. 6. You will write me a letter. 7. Today I shall go to Australia. 8. They (pl.) will arrive at 5 o'clock. 9. The man came. 10. You will tell me.

Lesson 15

OPTIONAL PHRASES

In this lesson we will examine the benefactive, manner, and accompaniment phrases which may be added to any verbal sentence.

83. Benefactive

The benefactive forms are as follows:

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>nō'u, nā'u</i> | for me |
| <i>nō 'oe, nā 'oe</i> | for you |
| <i>nōna, nāna</i> | for him, her |
| <i>nō tāua, nā tāua</i> | for us two (inc.) |
| <i>nō māua, nā māua</i> | for us two (exc.) |
| <i>nō 'ōrua, nā 'ōrua</i> | for you two |
| <i>nō rāua, nā rāua</i> | for them two |
| <i>nō tātou, nā tātou</i> | for us (inc.) |
| <i>nō mātou, nā mātou</i> | for us (exc.) |
| <i>nō 'outou, nā 'outou</i> | for you (pl.) |
| <i>nō rātou, nā rātou</i> | for them |
| <i>nā te tavana</i> | for the chief |
| <i>nō te tavana</i> | |
| <i>nā Teri'i</i> | for Terii |
| <i>nō Teri'i</i> | |

It can be seen, then, that the benefactive consists of *nō, nā*, followed by a pronoun, common noun, or proper noun. The use of *nō, nā* is the same as that of *tō, tā* with the possessive adjective in §37. Examples:

- 'E haere vau 'e rave mai 'i te puta nā 'oe.*
I shall go and get a book for you.
'E haere vau 'e ho'o mai 'i te va'a nō 'oe.
I shall go and buy a canoe for you.
'E haere au 'e ti'i 'i te mā'a nā te 'uri.
I shall go and get some food for the dog.
'E haere au 'e ti'i 'i te tia'a nō tā'u vahine.
I shall go and get some shoes for my wife.

84. Accompaniment

In Tahitian, accompaniment (= with) may be conveyed in three different ways, as follows:

(i) *e*

Examples:

- 'E haere au 'e ōri haere e tā'u 'uri.*
I am going for a walk with my dog.
'E haere au 'i te 'oire e taua ta'ata ra.
I shall go to town with that man.
'Ua reva ātu vau e 'o Peu.
I left with Peu.

(ii) *nā muri iho*

This form is synonymous with *e*. Examples:

- 'Ua ōri haere vau nā muri iho 'ia 'oe.*
I went for a walk with you.
'Ua reva ātu 'o Peu nā muri iho 'ia Teri'i.
Peu left with Terii.

(iii) When the one who accompanies is a third person or persons, a pronominal form is often used. Thus:

- 'Ua reva ātu māua 'o Peu.*
I left with Peu.
'Ua reva ātu Peu rāua 'o Teri'i.
Peu left with Terii.

85. Manner

The manner adverb, telling "how the action was done", is always placed immediately after the verb stem and even before the passive marker *hia*. Manner prepositional phrases, however, normally follow the subject.

Some common manner adverbs and prepositional manner phrases are:

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------|-------------------|-------------|
| <i>vitiviti</i> | quickly | <i>ma te puai</i> | strongly |
| <i>maita'i</i> | well | <i>mai</i> | like, as |
| <i>ri'i</i> | a little | <i>nā ni'a</i> | by |
| <i>taere</i> | slowly | <i>nā roto</i> | by means of |

Examples:

- 'Ua horo vitiviti 'oia.*
He ran fast.
'Ua papu'a maita'i te 'a'ahu 'o'omo.
The shirt was well washed.

'Ia paraparau ri 'i ihoa tāua 'i te reo Tahiti.

We must speak Tahitian a little.

'Ua ta'iri maita'i hia vau.

I was well beaten.

'Ua roa'a 'iāna te rē nā roto 'i tōna ītoīto.

He won through his courage.

'Ua 'āu 'oia ma te puai.

He swam strongly.

Mai 'ia 'oe 'ato'a te hoho'a 'ō tā 'oe tamaiti.

Your son is like you.

Mai tō'u tō 'oe tāūpo'o.

Your hat is like mine.

'Ua reva ātu 'oia nā ni'a 'i te manureva.

He left by plane.

With non-verbal sentences:

'E mea taere tāna tāmā'a.

He eats slowly.

'E mea vitiviti tāna horo.

He runs fast.

Manner is also conveyed by the following construction:

mai te + verb + hia

Example:

'Ua manuia 'oia mai te tauturu hia 'e tōna metua tāne.

He succeeded with the help of his father.

This construction does not occur often in conversation, and its usage sometimes suggests accompaniment, as in the following sentence:

'E tupu ia te tahi 'orira'a hanahana mai te peretiteni hia 'e te tavana rahi.

There is a grand ball, with the Governor as guest of honour.

86. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *'E haere vau 'e rave mai 'i te mā'a nā tā'u 'uri.* 2. *'E ho'o mai vau 'i te parahira'a nō tō'u fare.* 3. *'Ua rave mai vau 'i te hō'e va'a nō 'oe.*
4. *'E horo'a ātu 'outou 'i te tao'a nā te pōti'i.* 5. *'Ua haere 'oia 'i te 'oire e tāna 'uri.* 6. *'Ua 'āu maita'i 'oia.* 7. *'Ua haere 'oi'oi 'oia 'e tāi'a.* 8. *'E mea maita'i tāna 'āura'a.* 9. *Nā'u tēra puta.* 10. *'Ua ho'o mai vau 'i te hō'e pua'a nā tō'u na metua.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. I shall buy a hat for you. 2. He bought a fish for his wife. 3. I bought some fish for the feast. 4. They (pl.) got the book for me. 5. That book is for Terii. 6. I went to town with Peu. 7. He swam with his dog. 8. He swam fast. 9. He is swimming fast. 10. I made this canoe for you.

Lesson 16

PURPOSE AND CAUSE

Two important phrase types in Tahitian are the purpose and cause phrases, which correspond to the English "in order to" and "because".

87. Purpose

There are four methods of indicating purpose in Tahitian, as follows:

- nō te* + verb ± *-ra'a**
- 'ia* + verb
- 'e* + verb
- noun + verb

(i) *nō te* + verb

This form is used when purpose is stressed, when the subject of both verbs is the same. Examples:

'Ua haere 'oia nō te rave mai 'i te farāoa.

He went in order to get some bread.

'Ua rave 'oia 'i te to'i nō te tāpū 'i te vahie.

He took an axe in order to cut the wood.

Nō te hamanira'a 'i te pcu.

In order to make the posts.

(ii) *'ia* + verb

This form is used when the subject of both verbs is not the same. Examples:

Te 'āu ra 'oia 'ia riro te rē 'iāna.

He swam so that the prize might go to him.

'Ua ha'amaramarama maita'i vau 'iāna 'ia papū maita'i 'oia.

I explained carefully so that he would understand fully.

* The form without *-ra'a* occurs more frequently, but either construction may be used, according to preference.

(iii) *'e* + verb

This form is used when consequence rather than purpose is expressed. Examples:

'Ua haere 'oia 'e pa'imi 'i te pua'a.

He went to look for the pigs.

Te haere nei tō'u metua tāne 'e pipi 'i te tiare.

My father is going to water the flowers.

(iv) noun + verb

When the subject and purpose are closely linked, the verb immediately follows the noun and fills the role of an adjective. Examples:

'E tipi tāpū 'ina'i pua'atoro tēra.

That knife is for cutting meat.

'E mau 'uri āuā'u pua'a tēra.

Those dogs are for hunting pigs.

Note that a verb + *-ra'a* may also follow a noun as a modifier without overtones of purpose. Examples:

te parau fa'a'itera'a

the explanatory words

te taime tanura'a

the planting season

88. Cause

In Tahitian there are three methods of indicating cause, as follows:

nō te mea

nō + possessive adjective + verb + *-ra'a*

nā roto 'i

(i) *nō te mea*

This is the form most commonly used to indicate cause. Examples:

'Ua 'iria 'oia nō te mea 'ua parari 'ia'u te hi'o nō te

ha'amaramarama.

He is angry because I broke the window-panes.

'Ua ma'i hia vau nō te mea 'ua 'amu vau 'i te i'a ta'aero.

I am sick because I ate bad fish.

'I tāpū na vau 'i te vahie nō te mea 'aita 'e vahie nō te tunura'a 'i te mā'a.

I cut the wood because there was no wood to cook the food.

(ii) *nō* + possessive adjective + verb + *-ra'a*

Examples:

'Ua 'oa'oa 'oia nō tōna revara'a 'i Tahiti.

He is happy because he is going to Tahiti.

(Lit. he is happy with his going to Tahiti)

'Ua ma'i hia vau nō tō'u 'amura'a 'i te i'a ta'aero.
I am sick because I ate bad fish.

(iii) nā roto 'i

Example:

'Ua rave au nā roto 'i tō'u here 'iāna.
I did it because I love her.
(Lit. I did it in my loving her)

These three forms may be used one for the other, although the first form is the most common in conversational Tahitian.

89. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'Ua haere rātou nō te rave mai 'i te farāoa.
2. 'Ua haere 'o Teri 'i 'e tāpū 'i te vahie.
3. 'Ua haere vau nō te mea 'ua hīna'aro vau 'i te puta.
4. 'Ua fa'aea 'oia 'i te fare nō te mea 'e ūa.
5. 'E mea āu nā'u nō te mea 'e tiare nehenehe tēra.
6. 'Ua reva ātu 'oia nō te ōri haere.
7. 'Ua ta'oto noa 'oia nō te mea 'ua rohirohi 'oia.
8. 'Ua rave vau 'i te 'ohīpa nō te orara'a.
9. Te hamani ra 'oia 'i te poti 'ia nehenehe tāna 'e haere 'e tāi'a.
10. 'Ua haere ātu 'oia 'i te hora 'ahuru ma piti nō te mea 'e tāmā'a 'oia 'i ō Teri 'i tāne.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. He went to get some fish.
2. He took the hammer to build the house.
3. He bought some yams to give to his mother.
4. He is angry because I ate his fish.
5. I am happy because he is coming.
6. I like her because she is beautiful.
7. He still sat down because he was tired.
8. The leaves fell because the wind was strong.
9. He went bathing in the sea because it was hot.
10. He will go to town to see his friend.

Lesson 17

IMPERATIVES

90. The Three Degrees of Imperative

There are three degrees of imperative in Tahitian, each with its own form, as follows:

(i) *a* + verb

This is the strongest form, which is in fact an absolute command. It is formed by preceding any verb stem by the imperative particle *a*.
Examples:

A tāmā'a! Eat!

or *A tāmā'a 'oe!* Eat (you)!

(The verb may be followed by the subject for the sake of clarity.)

A horo'a ātu tēra puta 'iāna! Give him that book!

A hi'o na 'i tēra vāhi! Look at that place!

The negative or prohibitive form is:

'eiaha + 'e + verb

Example:

'Eiaha 'e 'amu 'i teie ūfi. Do not eat this yam.

(ii) 'e + verb

This imperative form is not an absolute command, but rather an imperative of persuasion. Example:

'E haere tāua. Let us (two) go.

'E haere mai 'outou. Come here.

(iii) 'ia + verb

This is the exhortative form of the imperative, "let us, let them", etc. Examples:

'Ia tāpe'a maita'i 'ona 'i teie tao'a.

May he look after this present.

'Ia tāpū 'oia 'i te vahie.

May he cut the wood.

'Eiaha forms the negative, as with the preceding two forms. Example:

'Eiaha 'oia 'ia pa'imi 'i te pua'a.

May he not seek the pigs.

91. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *A tāpū 'i te vahie.* 2. *A hi'o na!* 3. *'Eiaha 'e ta'i.* 4. *'Ia here rātou 'i te pōti'i.* 5. *'Eiaha 'e āu 'i teie vāhi.* 6. *A parahi.* 7. *A ti'a.* 8. *'Eiaha 'e rave 'i te tipī.* 9. *'Eiaha 'e pafa'i 'i te 'aute.* 10. *'Ia ho'i mai 'oe 'i te hora pae.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. Eat those yams. 2. Do not hit the dog. 3. Give me that book. 4. May they (pl.) be happy! 5. Do not run fast. 6. Go and get some fish at the market. 7. Grate the coconut. 8. Do not forget to get the theatre tickets. 9. Let us (dl inc.) go and get the boat this afternoon. 10. Let us (pl. inc.) prepare for the arrival of the Governor.

92. Arrival in Tahiti

Vocabulary:

| | |
|---|-----------------------|
| <i>te tahua taura'a manureva</i> | the airport |
| <i>te taiete</i> | the society, company |
| <i>te horo patete</i> | the passenger |
| <i>te vāhi fa'ari'ira'a</i> | the reception area |
| <i>te rātere</i> | the tourist |
| <i>ātea</i> | distant, far away |
| <i>'oia ho'i</i> | namely |
| <i>Marite</i> | U.S.A. |
| <i>Farāni</i> | France |
| <i>Niu Terani</i> | New Zealand |
| <i>te haere mai nei</i> | who approaches |
| <i>te tauiha'a</i> | the baggage, suitcase |
| <i>te pere'o'o</i> | the taxi, car |
| <i>te hotera</i> | the hotel |
| <i>āni</i> | to ask |
| <i>'e nehenehe anei tā 'oe 'e rave 'ia'u?</i> | can you take me? |
| <i>te ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o</i> | the taxi driver |
| <i>'afa'i</i> | to transport |
| <i>fa'a'ite</i> | to tell, explain |
| <i>fa'ahoro</i> | to convey, drive |
| <i>tei hea?</i> | where? |
| <i>hava'i</i> | to put, deposit |

Translate:

'I teie taime te tae nei tātou 'i te tahua taura'a manureva nō Tahiti Fa'a'a. 'I te hora hitu e te āfa te tae mai nei te manureva UTA nō te

taiete Farāni 'i te taura'a manureva nō Tahiti Fa'a'a. 'I teie taime te haere mai nei te mau horo patete nō te manureva UTA 'i roto 'i te vāhi fa'ari'ira'a nō te mau rātere. Te 'ite nei au 'e raverahi mau rātere nō te mau fenua ātea mai, 'oia ho'i, nō te fenua Farāni, nō te fenua Marite mai, nō te fenua Europa mai, e nō te fenua Niu Terani 'ato'a.

Te 'ite nei vau 'i te hō'e ta'ata te haere mai nei e tāna mau tauiha'a. Te hina'aro nei 'oia 'e rave 'i te hō'e pere'o'o nō te haere 'i tōna hotera. Te āni nei teie ta'ata rātere 'i te hō'e ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o nō te 'afa'i ātu 'iāna 'i te 'oire, te vāhi tei reira tōna hotera. Te āni nei 'oia 'i teie ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o:

"A fa'a'ite mai na 'oe 'ia'u, 'e nehenehe anei tā 'oe 'e rave 'ia'u nō te fa'ahoro ātu 'i te hotera?"

"E, 'e nehenehe roa, 'e haere tāua. Tei hea tō 'oe mau tauiha'a?"

"Teie, 'e nehenehe tā 'oe 'e rave."

"'E hava'i vau 'i roto 'i te pere'o'o, 'e haere tāua 'i tō 'oe hotera 'i Pape'ete."

Lesson 18

THE INTERROGATIVE I

93. Yes?, No?

For questions expecting the answer “yes” or “no”, the interrogative marker is *anei*, which immediately follows the verb in affirmative sentences. The word order is:

verb + interrogative + subject

Examples:

'Ua 'āu anei 'ona 'inanahi ra?

Did he swim yesterday?

'Ua hohonī hia anei te ta'ata 'e te 'uri?

Was the man bitten by the dog?

Te ta'oto nei anei 'o Teri'i?

Is Teri'i sleeping?

'E ta'urua anei tō 'ananahi?

Will there be a feast tomorrow?

'E mea 'uo'uo anei tēra manu?

Is that bird white?

It should be noted that *anei*, although following the verb, is preceded by adverbs or directionals whenever they occur. Example:

'Ua horo 'oi'oi mai anei 'oe?

Did you run here fast?

With the negative interrogative “did you not?”, the word order is the same as for any negative sentence, *anei* following the negative particle to give the following formula:

negative + *anei* + subject + verb

Examples:

'Aita anei 'oe 'i ta'iri 'iāna?

Did you not hit him?

'Aita anei te mau feiā tu'e-popo nō Rai'ātea 'i tae mai?

Didn't the footballers from Raiatea arrive?

'E 'ere anei 'i tō 'oe mana'o?

Is it not your idea?

94. Interrogative Subject

There are three methods of asking the question “who?” or “what?” in Tahitian, as follows:

- (i) *'o vai* + noun or pronoun (who?)
'e aha + noun or pronoun (what?)

Examples:

'O vai tēra ta'ata?

Who is that man?

'O vai 'oia?

Who is he?

'O vai 'o 'oe?*

Who are you?

'O vai mā taua feiā ra?

Who are those people?

'E aha tēra tumu rā'au?

What is that tree?

- (ii) *'o vai* + noun + $\begin{bmatrix} tei \\ te \end{bmatrix}$

With verbal interrogative sentences, there remains the same interrogative, *'o vai*, plus the relative particle *tei* or *te*. *Te* is used with verbs in the present continuous or future tense, while *tei* is used elsewhere. Examples:

'O vai tei 'ite 'i te 'āu?

Who knows how to swim?

'O vai tei horo'a ātu 'i te puta nā 'oe?

Who gave you the book?

'O vai te vahine tei tunu 'i te ūfi?

Which woman prepared the yams?

'O vai te ta'ata tei horo'a hia te puta 'e te tavana?

Which person was given the book by the chief?

With present and future tense, *te* may be replaced by *'e* in conversation. Examples:

'O vai te vahine 'e tunu 'i te ūfi 'ananahi?

Which woman will prepare the yams tomorrow?

'O vai tēra ta'ata 'e 'āu ra?

Who is that person swimming?

- (iii) *nā vai* + *'i* + verb

This interrogative form translates literally “by whom?”, but serves the same purpose as *'o vai* above. This form, however, is used only with transitive verbs. Examples:

Nā vai 'i rave tā'u peni-pāpa'i?†

Who took my ballpoint pen?

* Cf. §11, the third usage of *'o*.

† Cf. §47, second footnote.

Nā vai 'i horo'a ātu 'i tāna 'ava'ava?
Who gave him his cigarettes?

95. Interrogative Non-Subject

The non-subject interrogatives ask such questions as “whom?” “which?” “to whom?” “whose?” “by whom?”

- (i) *'o vai* + possessive adjective (whom?)
tehia + noun (which?)

Examples:

'O vai tā 'oe 'e 'ite ra?

Whom do you see?

'O vai tā 'oe 'i horo'a ātu 'i te puta?

To whom did you give the book?

(It should be observed that the possessive adjective always takes the *tā* form, and that *'e* indicates present or future tense, while *'i* indicates past tense.)

'O vai tā rātou 'e here?

Whom do they like?

'O vai tā te tavana 'e here?

Whom does the chief like?

Tehia tā 'oe 'e hina'aro?

Which one do you want?

Tehia pīripou tā 'oe 'e hina'aro?

Which trousers do you want?

- (ii) *'ia vai* (to whom?)
'i tehia ta'ata (to which person?)

Examples:

'Ua horo'a hia 'ia vai ra te puta?

To whom was the book given?

'Ua horo'a 'oe 'i te puta 'ia vai ra?

To whom did you give the book?

'Ua horo'a 'oe 'i te puta 'i tehia ta'ata?

To which person did you give the book?

- (iii) *nō vai*; *nā vai* (whose?)
nō tehia ta'ata; *nā tehia ta'ata* (whose?)
'ō tō vai; *'ō tā vai* (whose is?)

Examples:

Nō vai tēra va'a?

Whose is that canoe?

Nā vai tēra puta?

Whose is that book?

This is the most common form of “whose?” in conversational Tahitian, the choice of *nō* or *nā* being determined by the same rules as for possessive adjectives (cf. §36).

Nō tehia ta'ata te pīripou nei?

Whose are these trousers?

Nā tehia ta'ata te puta nei?

Whose is this book?

(Lit. of which person is this book?)

'Ō tō vai te va'a maita'i ā'e?

Whose is the best canoe?

'Ō tā vai te fa'a'apu rahi ā'e?

Whose is the biggest plantation?

This last form (*'ō tō vai*; *'ō tā vai*) is used best to translate “who has the . . .”, rather than “whose is . . .”, and is used only with this connotation.

- (iv) *'e vai* (by whom?)
'e tehia ta'ata (by which person?)

Examples:

'Ua rave hia tō 'oe tāūpo'o 'e vai?

By whom was your hat stolen?

'Ua horo'a hia 'e tehia ta'ata?

By whom was it given?

These forms are used only with the verb in the passive voice.

- (v) *'i ō vai* (to, at whose place?)

Example:

'Ua haere 'oe 'i ō vai mā?

To whose place did you go?

'Ua haere vau 'i ō Teri'i mā.

I went to Terii's place.

Note that *mā* follows *vai* when a plurality is implied or suspected. (See §13 for the usage of *mā*.)

95. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

- 'E mea 'uo'uo anei tēra manu?*
- 'E 'āu anei 'oia 'ananahi?*
- 'Ua ta'iri anei 'ona 'i tāna 'uri?*
- 'O vai tēra vahine?*
- Nā vai 'i ta'iri 'i tā'u 'uri?*
- 'O vai tei ta'i 'i roto 'i te piha?*
- 'O vai te ta'ata 'e tu'u hia 'i roto 'i te fare 'auri?*
- 'O vai te ta'ata tei horo'a hia te puta 'e te tavana?*
- 'O vai tā 'oe 'e haere 'e hi'o?*
- Tehia 'i'a tā 'outou 'i rave?*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. To whose place will they (pl.) go? 2. Which dog does he want?
3. Whose is that watch? 4. By whom was it taken? 5. Whose is that car? 6. To whom did they (dl) give the present? 7. Who is that man? 8. Who hit the dog? 9. Whom did you see in town? 10. Who took the bread?

97. The Post Office

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>te fare rata</i> | the post office | <i>nā mua</i> | first |
| <i>te rātere</i> | the tourist | <i>horo'a</i> | to give |
| <i>haponō</i> | to send, post | <i>te farāne</i> | the franc |
| <i>te rata</i> | the letter | <i>e</i> | yes |
| <i>te afata tauiha'a</i> | the parcel | <i>'aita</i> | no |
| <i>tomo</i> | to enter | <i>ahiri</i> | well then |
| <i>'ite</i> | to see | <i>te tiro</i> | the kilogram |
| <i>āni</i> | to ask | <i>te tāra</i> | 5 francs CFP |
| <i>'e mea nafea?</i> | how? | <i>te manureva</i> | the aeroplane |
| <i>'e aha te huru?</i> | how are things? | <i>maurūru</i> | thank you |
| <i>'eiaha 'e rū</i> | don't panic | <i>'oa'oa</i> | to be pleased |
| <i>faito</i> | to weigh | <i>nō te mea</i> | because |
| <i>hi'o</i> | to observe, see | | |
| <i>'e aha tā 'oe 'e haere mai ai?</i> | what have you come for? | | |

Translate:

'I teie po'ipo'i 'ua haere te hō'e rātere 'i te fare rata nō te haponō 'i tāna rata 'i te fenua Marite e tāna 'ato'a afata tauiha'a. 'I teie taime te tomo nei 'ona 'i roto 'i te fare rata. Te 'ite nei 'oia 'i te hō'e pōti'i purotu nō te fare rata. 'I teie nei te āni ra 'oia 'i taua pōti'i ra 'e mea nafea 'ia haponō 'i tāna rata e tāna afata tauiha'a.

"'Ia ora na 'oe 'e teie pōti'i purotu. 'E aha te huru 'i teie po'ipo'i?"

"Maita'i roa. 'E aha tā 'oe 'e haere mai nei?"

"Te haere mai nei vau nō te haponō 'i tā'u nau rata 'e piti e tā'u afata tauiha'a 'i te fenua Marite."

"'Eiaha 'e rū, 'e faito vau 'i tā 'oe nau rata nā mua. A horo'a mai tā 'oe nau rata. Nō teie 'e piti nau rata 'e toru 'ahuru ma piti farāne. 'E mea haponō 'ato'a teie afata tā 'oe?"

"E, 'e mea haponō 'ato'a 'i te fenua Marite."

"Ahiri, a horo'a mai 'e faito vau. 'E piti tiro teie afata tā 'oe, 'e hō'e hanere tāra e maha 'ahuru te moni nō teie afata nō te haponora'a nā ni'a 'i te manureva."

"Maurūru 'ia 'oe 'e teie pōti'i purotu. Te 'oa'oa nei au nō te mea 'i tō'u haerera'a mai 'i roto 'i teie fare rata, 'ia hi'o vau 'o 'oe āna'e te pōti'i purotu roa."

Lesson 19

THE INTERROGATIVE II

This second lesson on the Tahitian interrogatives deals with the questions "why?", "where?", "when?", "how?", "what?"

98. Why?

There are three ways of asking the question "why?", as follows:

(i) *nō te aha . . . ai*

Examples:

Nō te aha 'oe 'i horo'a ātu ai 'i te puta 'iāna?

Why did you give him the book?

Nō te aha 'ona 'i maoro ai 'i tāna 'ohipa 'inanahi?

Why was he late for work yesterday?

Nō te aha te fenua 'i haumi ai?

Why is the ground wet?

Note that non-verbal sentences become verbalised when the question "why?" is asked, and that the directional *ai* always follows the verb.

(ii) *'e aha . . . ai*

This form is exactly the same as the last, but more colloquial.

Examples:

'E aha 'oe 'e āu ai?

Why are you swimming?

'E aha tēra ta'ata 'i parahi noa ai?

Why is that man still sitting down?

(iii) *'e aha te tumu . . . ai*

This form asks "for what reason?" Example:

'E aha te tumu rātou 'i tae mai ai 'i 'onei?

Why have they come here?

With the negative interrogative, "why not?", there is a special construction, as follows:

interrogative . . . 'ore ai 'e + verb

Examples:

Nō te aha 'oe 'e 'ore ai 'e 'āu?

Why don't you swim?

Nō te aha 'oe 'i 'ore ai 'e tunu 'i te mā'a?

Why didn't you prepare the food?

99. Where?

There are several methods of asking "where?" Each method will be explained in turn.

(i) *tei hea* + noun

This is the fixed formula for non-verbal sentences. Examples:

Tei hea te fare toa? Where is the shop?

Tei hea te pōti'i? Where is the girl?

(ii) With verbal sentences, past tense, there are two constructions, although the same question marker is used.

$\left[\begin{array}{l} 'i\ hea \\ tei\ hea \end{array} \right] + 'i\ te + verb + -ra'a$

$\left[\begin{array}{l} 'i\ hea \\ tei\ hea \end{array} \right] + \text{possessive adjective} + verb + -ra'a$

Examples:

'I hea 'ona 'i te 'āura'a 'inanahi?

Where did he swim yesterday?

'I hea 'ona 'i te tahunara'a 'i te puta?

Where did he hide the book?

'I hea tōna 'āura'a 'inanahi ra?

Where did he swim yesterday?

'I hea tō 'oe vaihora'a 'i te puta?

Where did you put the book?

'I hea tō te vahine vaihora'a 'i te puta?

Where did the woman put the book?

It should be noted that the *tō* form of the possessive adjective is used, and that the two constructions above may be used interchangeably.

(iii) With verbal sentences, future and present tense, there is a different construction:

$\left[\begin{array}{l} 'i\ hea \\ 'ei\ hea \end{array} \right] + \text{subject} + 'e + verb \dots ai$

Examples:

'Ei hea 'o 'oe 'e tāmā'a ai 'i teie pō?

Where will you eat tonight?

'I hea 'ona 'e 'āu ai?

Where will he swim?

(iv) Where to?

This question is indicated simply by placing *'i hea* after the verb.

Example:

'e haere 'oe 'i hea?

Where are you going?

(v) Where from?

This question is usually asked in a non-verbal way. Thus:

Mai hea mai 'oe?

Where do you come from?

Or: *Nō hea tēra pahī?*

Where is that boat from?

100. When?

There are three methods of asking the question "when?" in Tahitian.

(i) $\left[\begin{array}{l} afea \\ ahea \\ anafea \end{array} \right] + \text{future tense} + ai$

Any of these three question markers may be used without distinction. Examples:

Anafea 'oia 'e reva ai?

When will he leave?

Afea rātou 'e ta'oto ai?

When will they sleep?

Afea 'o 'oe 'e ho'i mai ai?

When will you come back?

(ii) $\left[\begin{array}{l} inafea \\ 'i\ anafea \end{array} \right] + \text{past tense} + ai$

Either of these question markers may be used without distinction. Example:

'I anafea 'oia 'i reva ātu ai?. When did he leave?

Note that with the past tense, the nominalised form of the verb is also used, as in:

Inafea tō 'oe haerera'a 'e tāi'a?

When did you go fishing?

In such cases, the *tō* form of the possessive adjective is used, as in §99.

(iii) *'e aha te taimē . . . ai*

This is a general interrogative and may be used without tense distinction. Example:

'E aha te taimē 'ona 'i ta'iri ai 'i te 'uri?

When did he hit the dog?

101. How?

There are two methods of asking "how?" in Tahitian, as follows:

- (i) $\left[\begin{array}{l} 'ua\ nafea \\ 'e\ nafea \\ te\ nafea\ ra \end{array} \right] + \text{subject} + 'i\ te + \text{verb}$

The form with *'ua* indicates past tense, with *'e* the future, and with *te . . . ra* the present. Examples:

'Ua nafea rātou 'i te rave?

How did they do it?

'Ua nafea rātou 'i te hamani 'i te fare?

How did they build the house?

'E nafea rātou 'i te rave?

How will they do it?

'E nafea rātou 'i te hamanira'a 'i te fare?*

How will they build the house?

Te nafea ra 'oe 'i te hamanira'a 'i te fare?

How are you building the house?

- (ii) $\left[\begin{array}{l} 'e\ mea\ nafea \\ 'e\ nafea \\ te\ nafea\ ra \end{array} \right] + \left[\begin{array}{l} [tō] \\ [tā] \end{array} \right] + \text{subject} + \text{verb} + -ra'a$

'E mea nafea indicates past tense, while *'e nafea* and *te nafea ra* are as explained in §101(i).

The use of *tō* and *tā* is important. When the *tō* form is used the nuance of the question is "how did you manage to?", while the *tā* form is more direct, and expects an answer of the type "with an axe, with a hammer". Examples:

'E mea nafea tā rātou ravera'a?

How did they do it?

'E mea nafea tā rātou hamanira'a 'i te fare?

How did they build the house?

'E nafea tā rātou ravera'a?

How will they do it?

Te nafea ra tō 'oe hamanira'a 'i te fare?

How are you building the house?

102. What?

With non-verbal sentences, "what?" is translated by *'e aha* plus noun, pronoun, or demonstrative. Examples:

'E aha tēra? What is that?

'E aha tēra tumu rā'au? What is that tree?

* The *-ra'a* form is often used when the direct object of the verb is stated.

With verbal sentences, the form is *'e aha* plus possessive adjective plus verb. Examples:

'E aha tā 'oe 'e rave ra?

What are you doing there?

'E aha tā 'oe 'e hi'o ra?

What are you looking at there?

'E aha tā 'oe 'i 'ite 'inanahi ra?

What did you see yesterday?

'E aha tā 'oe 'e 'ite 'ananahi?

What will you see tomorrow?

There is an idiomatic expression for "what are you doing?", "how will you be fixed?" etc. as follows:

Te aha na 'oe? What are you doing?

'I aha na 'oe? How were you?

'E aha 'oe 'ananahi? How will you be fixed?

Also: *'E aha tō 'oe?* What's the matter with you?

'E aha tōna? What's the matter with him?

"What with?" is rendered by *'i te aha?* Example:

'Ua ta'iri 'oia 'i te aha? What did he hit it with?

"By what?" is translated by *'e te aha?* Example:

'Ua pātia hia 'oe 'e te aha? By what were you pricked?

103. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *Nō te aha rātou 'e 'āu ai?*
2. *Nō te aha 'ona 'i ta'iri ai 'i te 'uri?*
3. *Nō te aha te 'uri 'i taparahi hia ai?*
4. *Tei hea tōna vaihora'a 'i te puta?*
5. *'E haere te vahine 'i hea?*
6. *'E haere 'o 'oe ihea 'i teie nei?*
7. *'E aha tā tātou 'ohipa 'i teie pō?*
8. *Inafea 'oia 'i horo'a ātu ai 'i te puta?*
9. *'E mea nafea tā rātou hamanira'a 'i te va'a?*
10. *'E aha tā 'outou 'e 'amu ra?*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. Why did they take it?
2. Why did you come?
3. Where is the post office?
4. Where did you go yesterday?
5. When did the woman sleep?
6. Where are you from?
7. What is your name?
8. How did they kill the shark?
9. What did you give them?
10. Where is your hat?

104. Conversation

Vocabulary:

| | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>'i hea?</i> | where? |
| <i>ho'o mai</i> | to buy |
| <i>noa</i> | only, always |

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>te fē'i</i> | the red bananas |
| <i>te 'umara</i> | the sweet potato |
| <i>te ūfi</i> | the yam |
| <i>ri'i</i> | a little |
| <i>afea?</i> | when? |
| <i>'e riro paha</i> | perhaps |
| <i>te maorora'a</i> | the duration, length |
| <i>'aore ra</i> | or |
| <i>nō te mea</i> | because |
| <i>te hoa</i> | the friend |
| <i>pāpa'i</i> | to write |
| <i>mai te mea</i> | if, whether |
| <i>hina'aro</i> | to want |
| <i>fa'afa'aea</i> | to remain, stay |
| <i>'e nehenehe roa tā māua</i> | we can |
| <i>fa'aoti</i> | to conclude, end |
| <i>paraparau</i> | to talk, chat |
| <i>tia'i</i> | to wait |
| <i>te vahine-fa'aipoipo</i> | the wife |
| <i>tunu</i> | to prepare |
| <i>te mā'a</i> | the food |
| <i>'i teie mahāna</i> | now, today |

Translate:

"I hea 'oe 'i teie mahāna?"

"Ua haere au 'i te mātete 'e ho'o mai 'i te i'a. 'Ua tae vau 'i te mātete, 'aita 'e i'a. 'Ua rave noa mai vau 'i te mau fē'i, te 'umara, te ūfi. E 'o 'oe, 'i hea 'oe 'i teie mahāna?"

"Ua haere vau 'e 'āu nō te mea 'aita tā'u 'e 'ohipa 'i teie mahāna. 'Ua mana'o vau 'e haere 'e 'āu ri'i. Afea 'outou 'e haere ai 'i Ra'iātea?"

"Te mana'o nei vau 'e riro paha 'i teie hepetoma 'i mua nei. 'Ei reira mātou 'e haere ātu ai 'i Ra'iātea. Te maorora'a 'e riro paha 'e piti 'aore ra 'e toru 'ava'e. E 'outou? 'E haere 'outou 'i hea 'i teie mau mahāna 'i mua nei?"

"Te mana'o nei māua 'e haere ātu 'i te mau motu Matuīta mā, nō te mea te vai ra te tahi mau hoa tō māua 'o tei pāpa'i mai, mai te mea 'e hina'aro māua 'i te haere 'e fa'afa'aea te tahi mau mahāna 'i Matuīta. 'E nehenehe roa tā māua 'e reva ātu 'i te fenua Matuīta."

"I teie taime te mana'o nei vau 'ua tae 'i te hora nō te haerera'a 'e 'āu. Nō reira, te hina'aro nei vau 'e fa'aoti 'i tā tāua paraparaura'a. Te mana'o 'ato'a nei vau ē, te tia'i noa mai ra tā 'oe vahine fa'aipoipo 'i te fare nō te tunu 'i te mā'a. 'E tāmā'a maita'i ia 'ōrua 'i teie mahāna."

Lesson 20

DEPENDENT SENTENCES I

105. Dependent Subject

The first type of dependent sentence to be explained is what is often called "the relative clause or sentence", of the type "I saw the man who took the book".

There are several constructions in Tahitian, dependent on tense, and on whether the verb in the dependent clause describes an action or a state.

(i) With sentences beginning with "it is they who . . .", "it is you who . . .", etc., the relative pronouns are *tei* (past tense) and *te* (future tense and present continuous). Examples:

'O vau te taora 'i te 'ofa'i.

It is I who will throw stones.

'O vau tei taora 'i te 'ofa'i 'inanahi ra.

It is I who threw stones yesterday.

'O vau te parau nei.

It is I who am speaking.

(ii) With sentences beginning with "I saw the man who . . .", "I saw the dog that . . .", in other words, when the main clause contains a verb in Tahitian, the construction used depends on the tense of the dependent clause.

When the verb of the dependent clause is in the present or past continuous, the forms are:

'e + verb + *nei* (present)

'e + verb + *ra* (past)

In this case, *nei* indicates proximity to the speaker, while *ra* indicates that the action takes place further away. Examples:

Te 'ite ra vau 'i hō'e vahine 'e 'āu ra.

I saw a woman who was swimming.

A hi'o na 'oe 'i te mau manu 'e ma'ue nei.

Look at the birds which are flying.

When the verb of the dependent clause is in the past tense, there are two possibilities. If a completed action is described, then *'o tei* is the relative pronoun used. Example:

'E ā'o 'oe 'i te tamaiti 'o tei taora mai 'i te 'ofa'i.

You will correct the boy who threw the stone.

If the action described in the dependent clause is a state, rather than an action, such as "I saw the boy throwing a stone" as opposed to "I saw the boy who threw the stone", then the following construction is used:

... *'i te + verb + ra'a*

Examples:

'Ua 'ite au 'i te hō'e ta'ata 'i te tāpūra'a 'i te vahie.

I saw the man cutting the wood.

'Ua 'ite au 'i te hō'e ta'ata 'i te horo'ara'a 'i te mā'a nā te 'uri.

I saw a man giving food to the dog.

Te fa'aro'o nei au 'i te 'aiū 'i te ta'ira'a.

I hear the baby crying.

When the verb of the dependent clause is in the future tense, the relative pronoun *'o te* is used. Examples:

Te ta'ata 'o te 'ia 'e fa'ahapa hia 'oia 'e te ture.

The person who steals will be punished by the law.

'O vai 'o te paraparau nō te ha'amaurūra'a 'i te mau manihini?

Who will speak to thank the guests?

(iii) When the verb of the dependent clause is in the passive voice, there are two possibilities, *tei* or *'i*, for the past, and also two, *te* or *'e*, for the future tense or present continuous. Examples:

'Ua inu vau 'i te rā'au tei horo'a hia nā te pōti'i.

I drank the medicine that was given to the girl.

'Ua 'ite vau 'i te tao'a te horo'a hia nā te tavana.

I have seen the present that will be given to the chief.

It should be noted that *'o tei*, *'o te* may be replaced by *tei*, *te* without distinction.

106. Dependent Non-subject

This type of dependent clause is the one in which the subject is not the actor, as was the case in §105. It is found in sentences of the type "the man whom we . . ." The relative pronoun, in this case, is replaced by the possessive adjective *tā* or *'o tā* plus noun or pronoun. To the verb is added *'i* for past tense, *'e* for present or future. Examples:

'E inu vau 'i te pia tā'u 'e āu maita'i.

I shall drink the beer that I like.

'Ua 'ite au 'i te tao'a tā rātou 'i horo'a ātu nā te tavana.

I saw the gift they gave to the chief.

'Ua 'ite au 'i te tao'a tā te vahine 'i horo'a ātu 'i te tavana.

I saw the gift that the woman gave to the chief.

It should be noted that the English "to whom was given", etc., is translated in Tahitian by "who was given", similar in structure to the dependent clauses of §105(iii). Example:

'Ua 'ite au 'i te ari'i 'o tei horo'a hia te maro 'ura.

I saw the king to whom the red belt was given.

(Lit. I saw the king who was given the red belt)

As was stated above, the student of Tahitian must consider Tahitian in its own terms if he is to think in Tahitian and not simply translate literally from his own mother tongue.

[*'e tei*]
[*nā tei*] by whom, which

This form is used mainly when the verb of the main clause is in the passive voice. Either *'e* or *nā* may be used to indicate the agent. Example:

'Ua tāpe'a hia 'oia nā tei tapapa mai 'iāna.

He was stopped by the person who pursued him.

107. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *'O 'outou tei ta'iri 'ia'u 'inanahi ra.*
2. *'Ua 'ite au 'i te hō'e ta'ata 'i te hamanira'a 'i te fare.*
3. *'E ho'o mai vau 'i te 'uri 'o te horo'a hia nā rātou.*
4. *Tēra te fare tā'u 'e hina'aro.*
5. *Tēra te 'uri tā rātou 'i ho'o mai.*
6. *'Ua 'ite au 'i te tāmuta tei hamani 'i tēra fare.*
7. *'Ua haere vau 'e rave mai 'i te pua'a 'o te tupa'i hia nō te fa'aipoipora'a.*
8. *'Ua 'ite au 'i te ta'ata 'o te pa'imi hia ra 'e te mau muto'i.*
9. *'Ua 'ite hia 'e au te moni tā 'oe 'i mo'e.*
10. *'E mea āu roa nā'u te pere'o'o tāna 'i ho'o mai.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. It is you (pl.) who will build the boat.
2. I saw the man who hit your dog.
3. This is the girl who planted the flowers.
4. That is the girl whom we (pl. inc.) saw.
5. This is the letter that the chief wrote.
6. The person who wrote this book has left.
7. I met the girl who was married yesterday.
8. I saw Moana planting a coconut tree.
9. I went and watched my wife swimming.
10. It is they (dl) who went fishing for crayfish.

108. Visit to the Shops

Vocabulary:

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>fa'a'ite</i> | to explain |
| <i>te haerera'a</i> | the visit |
| <i>te fare toa</i> | the shop |
| <i>ho'o-haere</i> | to shop |
| <i>te tauiha'a</i> | the purchase |
| <i>hina'aro</i> | to want |
| <i>tomo</i> | to enter |
| <i>āni</i> | to ask |
| <i>te tamāhine-ho'oho'o</i> | the shop assistant |
| <i>horo'a</i> | to give |
| <i>te pīripou</i> | the trousers |
| <i>ninamu</i> | blue |
| <i>'ehia moni?</i> | how much? |
| <i>te tāra</i> | 5 francs CFP |
| <i>tehia?</i> | which one? |
| <i>'aufau</i> | to pay |
| <i>te 'ahu 'o'omo</i> | the shirt |
| <i>'eiaha 'e rū!</i> | don't rush! |
| <i>ti'i</i> | to get, collect |
| <i>rave</i> | to take |
| <i>pu'ohu</i> | to wrap up |
| <i>te fa'ari'i</i> | the paper bag |
| <i>maurūru</i> | to thank |
| <i>ha'amaramarama</i> | to explain |
| <i>te moni-ho'o</i> | the price |

Translate:

'I teie nei, teie te tahi mau parau fa'a'itera'a nō te haere 'i roto 'i te fare toa. 'I teie taime te haere nei tātou 'i roto 'i te hō'e fare toa nō te ho'o-haere 'i te mau tauiha'a tā tātou 'e hina'aro.

'I teie taime te tomo nei ia vau 'i roto 'i te fare toa, e te āni nei vau 'i teie tamāhine-ho'oho'o 'i roto 'i te fare toa:

"Te hina'aro nei vau 'i te hō'e pīripou maita'i nō'u."

Te āni nei vau 'iāna, 'e horo'a mai tēra pīripou ninamu. Te horo'a mai nei 'ona 'i teie taime.

"'Ehia moni 'i tēra pīripou?"

"'E piti hanere tāra e pae hanere. Tehia tā 'oe 'e hina'aro?"

"'E hina'aro vau 'i tēra mea ninamu. 'Ehia moni?"

"'E piti hanere tāra."

"'A horo'a mai tēra mea ninamu."

'Ua horo'a mai 'ona, e 'ua rave vau. 'Ua 'aufau vau 'i te moni 'e piti hanere tāra.

"Tēra tā 'oe moni. 'E horo'a 'ato'a mai 'oe 'i tēra 'ahu haviti 'i 'ō 'i tēra vāhi tā'u 'e 'ite nei. A horo'a mai na."

"'Eiaha 'e rū, 'e haere vau 'e ti'i. Tēra tā 'oe 'ahu. 'E hina'aro?"

"'E, 'e hina'aro ihoa vau 'i tēra 'ahu. Fa'a'ite mai 'oe 'ia'u 'ehia moni."

"Teie te moni 'ō tēra 'ahu. Hō'e hānere tāra e toru 'ahuru."

"'E 'ere 'i te mea moni roa. 'E rave vau. A pu'ohu mai 'oe 'i te pīripou e te 'ahu 'i roto 'i te tahi fa'ari'i. E, tēra mai te moni nō te 'ahu e te pīripou."

"Te haere nei vau e maurūru roa 'ia 'oe, 'i te horo'ara'a mai 'i te mau parau ha'amaramarama nō ni'a 'i te mau moni-ho'o nō te 'ahu e te mau pīripou nō te fare toa nei."

Lesson 21

DEPENDENT SENTENCES II

This type of dependent clause follows, for example, "I know", where the dependent clause is of the type "why he broke the window", "when he is coming".*

109. Why

"Why", introducing a dependent clause, is rendered by *nō te aha* in Tahitian. Examples:

'Ua 'ite au nō te aha 'oia 'i haere ai 'e 'āu.

I know why he went swimming.

'Ua 'ite au nō te aha 'oia 'i hohonu hia 'e te ma'o.

I know why he was bitten by the shark.

110. When

When the dependent clause precedes the main clause, "when" is *ia* in Tahitian. Examples:

'Ia oti tā rātou pafa'ira'a 'anani, 'e pou mai rātou.

When their orange harvest is finished, they descend.

'Ia marū te mata'i, 'e haere ai tāua 'e tāi'a.

When the wind has dropped, we will go fishing.

'Ia te tavana 'i reva ātu, te paraparau noa ra ia te mau ta'ata.

When the chief left, people were still talking.

'Iāna 'i reva ātu, te ta'oto noa ra 'oe.

When he left, you were still asleep.

'Ia'u 'i parau, te parau 'ato'a ra 'oia.

When I spoke, he was talking also.

Note that with this construction the object form of the pronoun is used to indicate the subject.

When the dependent clause is of the type which usually follows the main clause, there are two possible constructions:

* In strict linguistic terms, some of the clauses dealt with in this lesson would be considered to be types of complements, but, as they have similar structure patterns to the strict dependent clauses, (for pedagogical reasons) they are considered as such and will be all treated in this one lesson.

- (i) [*'i te mahāna*] + subject + verb
[*'e aha te taimē*]

Examples:

'Aita roa vau 'i 'ite 'i te mahāna 'oia 'e tae mai ai.

I do not know when he will arrive.

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e aha te taimē 'oia 'e ho'i mai ai.

I do not know when he will return.

- (ii) *'i te mahāna* + *nō* + verb + *ra'a*

Example:

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'i te mahāna nō tōna taera'a mai.

I do not know when he will return.

111. While, When

"While" is translated in Tahitian by the particle *'a* in the place of the ordinary tense markers. Examples:

'I teie taimē 'a parauparau ai vau nā roto 'i te reo 'ō Radio Tahiti, te 'ite nei vau 'i te hō'e ta'ata.

At this moment while I speak on Radio Tahiti, I see a man.

'i te 'ava'e 'a pohe ai 'oia

in the month when he died

When two actions are performed simultaneously, *ma te* + verb is generally used to denote "at the same time as". Examples:

'Ua ōri haere 'oia ma te inu 'i te pape.

He walked along drinking water.

Te ōri haere ra 'oia ma te hi'o 'i muri.

He was walking along looking behind him.

When the second verb is thought of as a verb of motion, the formula *mai te* + verb + *mai* is used. Examples:

'E pou mai rātou 'i raro mai te āmo mai 'i te 'anani.

They descend bearing the oranges.

Te haere pauroa te mau hui ra'atira mai te tāmāu mai 'i te hei 'i ni'a 'i te ūpo'o.

The people come wearing crowns of flowers on their heads.

112. How

"How" is rendered in Tahitian by:

- (i) Past: *'e mea nafea* + possessive adjective + verb + *ra'a*
(ii) Future: *'e nafea* + subject + *'i te* + verb

Examples:

'Ua 'ite au 'e mea nafea tōna fa'afanaura'a 'i tā'u vahine.
I know how he prepared for my wife's confinement.
'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e nafea 'ona 'i te hamani 'i tōna fare.
I do not know how he will build his house.

113. What

'Eaha + possessive adjective + verb translates "what" in dependent clauses such as:

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e aha tāna 'e rave nei.
I do not know what he is doing.
'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e aha tāna 'ohipa 'inanahi ra.
I do not know what he was doing yesterday.

114. Whether

"Whether" is indicated in Tahitian by *anei* following the verb of the dependent clause. Examples:

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e hohoni hia anei 'oia 'e te ma'o.
I do not know if he will be bitten by a shark.
'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e haere mai anei 'oia 'ananahi.
I do not know if he will come tomorrow.

115. That

Ē (that), at the end of the main clause, introduces the dependent clause after verbs of knowing. Examples:

'Ua 'ite au *ē* 'ua reva ātu 'oia 'inanahi ra.
I know that he left yesterday.
'Ua 'ite au *ē* 'e ma'i tō tēra ta'ata.
I know that that man is sick.

With verbs of saying, however, the *ē* is frequently omitted. Example:

'Ua parau vau 'e haere mai te tavana.
I said that the chief will come.

116. Since

There are two constructions which translate "since". They are as follows:

(i) *mai te mahāna* + subject + 'a . . .

This construction is used when the subject precedes the verb in the dependent clause. Example:

Mai te mahāna vau 'a tae mai ai 'i Tahiti, 'aita te fare 'i tauī.
Since I have arrived back in Tahiti, the house has not changed.

(ii) *mai te mahāna* 'i + verb + subject

This is used when the subject follows the verb in the dependent clause. Example:

mai te mahāna 'i reva ātu ai 'oe . . .
since you left . . .

The choice of construction rests with the individual.

117. Where

There are two non-interrogative forms for "where".

(i) where there is/are . . .

This is translated in Tahitian by *tei reira* followed by a noun.

Examples:

te fa'a tei reira te 'anani
the valley where the oranges are
te vāhi tei reira te hotera
the place where the hotel is

(ii) where + verb

In Tahitian there are two possible constructions to express "where" in a dependent clause; either verb + subject + 'i *hea*, or 'i *te vāhi* + possessive adjective. Examples:

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'ua haere 'oia 'i hea.
I do not know where he went.
'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e haere ra 'oia 'i hea.
I do not know where he is going.

Or: 'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'i *te vāhi tāna* 'i haere.

I do not know where he went.
'Ua 'ite vau 'i *te vāhi tāna* 'e haere ra.
I know where he is going.

But: 'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'i *te vāhi* 'e haere ai 'oia.

I do not know where he will go.

With future tense, the normal verbal construction plus *ai* is reverted to.

118. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

- 'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'i *te mahāna rātou* 'i tae mai ai.
- 'Ua āu 'outou ma te inu 'i *te pia*.
- 'Aita rātou 'i 'ite nō *te aha* 'oia 'i ta'i ai.
- 'Ua 'ite au nō *te aha* 'oia 'i mā'iti hia ai 'ei tavana.
- Te parau ra te ta'ata ra, 'e ta'ata maita'i* 'o 'oe.
- 'Aita tātou 'i 'ite 'e aha *te taima* 'oia 'e ho'i mai ai.
- 'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e mea nafea 'i roa'a ai tāna pua'a.
- 'Aita 'oia 'i 'ite 'e haere mai anei rātou.
- 'E mana'o vau *ē* 'e 'ite 'oe 'i tā'u rata.
- 'Ua mana'o vau *ē* 'ua reva ātu 'oe.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. I know when he left.
2. He walked along eating an orange.
3. I do not know why he broke the glass.
4. I know when he built the house.
5. They (pl.) do not know why he left.
6. They know what I did yesterday.
7. I see that you have written to me.
8. He said that you are bad.
9. I think that he is strong.
10. I know how the girl broke the window-pane.

119. Copra

Vocabulary:

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>te pūha</i> | the copra |
| <i>hamani</i> | to make |
| <i>ha'aputu</i> | to heap up |
| <i>te ha'ari</i> | the coconut |
| <i>marō</i> | dry |
| <i>tāpūpū</i> | to cut in two |
| <i>te 'opa'a</i> | the ripe coconut |
| <i>te to'i</i> | the axe |
| <i>piharahara</i> | to open up |
| <i>pana</i> | to dig around, to scoop |
| <i>tatara</i> | to remove, detach |
| <i>te mā'a</i> | the food, the white of the coconut, the meat |
| <i>taura'i</i> | to dry in the sun |
| <i>te maorora'a</i> | the period, time |
| <i>mai te peu ē</i> | if |
| <i>'o'omo</i> | to put in a bag |
| <i>te pūte</i> | the sack, bag |
| <i>hopoi</i> | to send, transport |
| <i>ho'o</i> | to sell |

Translate:

Te parau nō te pūha. Nō te hamani 'i te pūha 'e ha'aputu hia te mau ha'ari marō 'ato'a. 'Ia oti, 'e tāpūpū hia te mau 'opa'a, 'oia ho'i te mau ha'ari marō 'ato'a. 'E tāpū hia 'i te to'i. 'I muri iho, 'e piharahara hia te mau 'opa'a tei tāpūpū hia e, 'e pana pauroa hia te mau ha'ari nō te tatara mai 'i te mā'a. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e taura'i hia te mau mā'a 'ō te ha'ari, 'oia ho'i te pūha, 'i ni'a 'i te mahāna 'i te maorora'a 'e piti 'aore ra 'e toru hepetoma te maorora'a, mai te peu ē 'e mea maita'i te mahāna. 'Ia marō maita'i te pūha, 'e 'o'omo hia 'i roto 'i te mau pūte nō te hopoi ātu 'e ho'o.

Lesson 22

SPECIAL VERBAL FORMS

120. Reflexive

In Tahitian, the reflexive may be expressed in the following way:

verb + subject + object pronoun

With this construction, the reflexive pronoun follows the subject.

Examples:

'Ua ha'apohe 'oia 'iāna.

He killed himself.

(Lit. was kill he him)

'Ua horohorōi vau 'ia'u 'i teie po'ipo'i.

I washed myself this morning.

Some verbs in Tahitian are reflexive in sense, and do not require the object pronoun. Examples:

'Ua mutu 'o Teri 'i 'i tēra tipī.

Terii cut himself with that knife.

'Ua mutu vau 'i te tipī.

I cut myself with a knife.

'Ua hi'ohi'o vau 'i roto 'i te hi'o.

I looked at myself in the mirror.

121. Reciprocal

The reciprocal involves the repetition of the pronoun, followed by *iho*. The sentence word order remains the same. Examples:

A moto 'outou 'outou iho!

Fight one another!

'E hina'aro vau 'ia tauturu rātou rātou iho.

I want them to help one another.

'E hina'aro vau 'ia tauturu tēra mau ta'ata 'ia rātou rātou iho.

I want these people to help one another.

122. Emphatic Pronoun

The emphatic pronoun consists of the ordinary subject pronoun + *iho* (cf. §42). Example:

Nā'u iho 'i rave.

I did it myself.

123. Ability/Inability

This form translates “can”, “able to”. There are two main constructions:

- (i) *'e nehenehe tā* + $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{noun} \\ \text{pronoun} \end{array} \right]$ *'e* + verb
(Lit. it is good my/your, etc. action)

Examples:

'E nehenehe tā'u 'e pa'uma 'i ni'a 'i tēra tumu rā'au.

I can climb that tree.

'E nehenehe anei tā 'oe 'e āmo mai 'i tēra pūte?

Can you carry that bag?

'E nehenehe tā tēra ta'ata 'e pa'uma 'i ni'a 'i tēra tumu rā'au.

The man can climb that tree.

'Ananahi 'e nehenehe tā'u 'e haere 'e 'āu.

Tomorrow I can go swimming.

- (ii) *'e nehenehe* $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{'ia + pronoun} \\ \text{'i te + noun} \end{array} \right]$ + *'ia* + verb

This construction is more formal than the first, and not as widely used in conversation. Examples:

'E nehenehe 'iāna 'ia horo.

He can run.

'E nehenehe 'i tēra ta'ata 'ia rave mai 'i tā 'oe tauiha'a.

That person can bring your things.

- (iii) *'e ti'a* (plus same construction as in ii)

This construction is very formal and not much used in conversation.

Example:

'E ti'a anei 'ia'u 'ia rave 'i teie ōpe?

Can I take this shovel?

- (iv) When inability is expressed, the construction changes to:

$\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{'e'ita} \\ \text{'aita} \end{array} \right]$ + *tā* $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{noun} \\ \text{pronoun} \end{array} \right]$ *'e nehenehe 'e* + verb

Example:

'E'ita tā'u 'e nehenehe 'e pa'uma 'i ni'a 'i tēra tumu rā'au.

I cannot climb that tree.

124. Competence/Incompetence

This construction corresponds to the English “to know how to”, “not to know how to”, as follows:

$\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{'ua} \\ \text{'e} \end{array} \right]$ *'ite . . .* + *'i te* + verb

Examples:

'Ua 'ite anei 'oe 'i te tumu 'i te ūfi?

Do you know how to prepare yams?

'E, 'ua 'ite au 'i te tumu 'i te ūfi.

Yes, I know how to prepare yams.

125. Attempted Action

This form corresponds to “try, attempt to”. The construction is as follows:

$\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{'ua} \\ \text{'e} \end{array} \right]$ *tāmata* (try) . . . *'i te* + verb

Examples:

'E tāmata vau 'i te hamani 'i te fare.

I shall try to build a house.

'Inanahi ra 'ua tāmata vau 'i te hamani 'i te hō'e afata.

Yesterday I tried to make a box.

126. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. *Te hi'ohi'o nei tāua tāua iho.*
2. *Te 'ite nei 'oia 'iāna 'i roto 'i te pape.*
3. *Nā rātou iho 'i ho'o mai 'i te farāoa.*
4. *Nāna iho 'i ta'iri 'i te 'uri ā Peu.*
5. *'Ananahi 'e tāmata vau 'i te haere 'e tāi'a.*
6. *'Ua 'ite anei 'oe 'i te tumu 'i te ūfi?*
7. *'Ua 'ite rātou 'i te hamani 'i te fare.*
8. *'E nehenehe tā'u 'e hamani 'i te fare.*
9. *'E nehenehe anei 'oe 'e rave 'i te 'ofa'i?*
10. *'E'ita tā'u 'e nehenehe 'e rave 'i te 'ofa'i.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. They (pl.) are looking at one another.
2. Yesterday they (dl) washed each other.
3. That man hit Terii's dog.
4. He will try to make a box.
5. I can lift the stone.
6. He cannot lift the stone.
7. Do you know how to build a house?
8. Can you (pl.) plant the yams?
9. Yes, we (pl. exc.) can certainly plant the yams.
10. We (pl. exc.) cannot plant the yams.

127. The Market

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>te mātete</i> | the market | <i>te tauiha'a</i> | the product |
| <i>'i</i> | full, to fill | <i>te hei-pūpū</i> | the shell necklace |
| <i>te mā'a</i> | the produce | <i>te ti'i</i> | the statue |
| <i>rau</i> | to be numerous | <i>te tāūpo'o</i> | the hat |
| <i>te huru</i> | the kind, sort | <i>te 'ete</i> | the basket |
| <i>fa'anaho</i> | to organise, place | <i>te rātere</i> | the tourist |
| <i>matara</i> | to be open | <i>māta'ita'i</i> | to look at, admire |
| <i>'e tae ātu</i> | until | <i>te rahira'a</i> | the quantity |
| <i>raverahi</i> | many | <i>riro</i> | to become |
| <i>te mata'eina'a</i> | the district | <i>te 'oa'oara'a</i> | the delight |
| <i>ho'o</i> | to sell | <i>te maurūrura'a</i> | the joy |

Translate:

Te mātete nō Tahiti, 'e 'i noa 'oia 'i te mā'a. 'Ua rau te huru 'i te mau mahāna 'ato'a. Mai teie te huru te mau fa'anahora'a: 'e matara noa te mātete nō Pape'ete mai te monire 'e tae ātu 'i te tapati, mai te hora maha 'i te po'ipo'i 'e tae ātu 'i te hora hitu 'i te pō. 'I te tapati 'e matara 'oia mai te hora maha 'i te po'ipo'i 'e tae ātu 'i te hora 'ahuru.

'E raverahi te mau mā'a 'e tae mai nō te mau mata'eina'a nō Tahiti. 'E tae 'ato'a mai tō te mau motu, nō Mo'orea, Huahine, Ra'iātea, Borabora. Te mahāna rahi ā'e te mā'a, 'i te mātete, mai te mahāna maha ia 'e tae ātu 'i te tapati. Mai te monire 'e tae ātu 'i te mahāna toru, 'aita 'e rahi te mā'a 'e tae mai 'i te mātete nō Pape'ete. 'E raverahi mau mā'a 'e ho'o hia e te tahi mau tauiha'a nō te fenua. 'E raverahi te huru 'ō te mau 'i'a. 'E ho'o 'ato'a hia te mau hei-pūpū, te mau ti'i, te mau tāūpo'o, te mau 'ete.

'E raverahi mau rātere 'e haere 'i te mātete nō Pape'ete nō te māta'ita'i te mau rahira'a mā'a e te 'i'a; 'ua rau te huru 'ō te mau tauiha'a nō te fenua. Nō reira, 'ua riro ia te mātete nō Pape'ete 'ei 'oa'oara'a, 'ei maurūrura'a nā te mau rātere.

Lesson 23

DESIDERATIVE,
NECESSITATIVE,
CONDITIONAL

128. Desiderative

The desiderative is expressed in the following ways:

- (i) $\begin{bmatrix} te \\ 'e \\ 'ua \end{bmatrix}$ hina'aro + subject + 'e + verb

This is the construction used when the subject is the same for both verbs. Examples:

*Te hina'aro nei au 'e ho'o mai 'i te heipūpū.**

I want to buy a shell necklace.

'E hina'aro vau 'e tunu 'i te ūfi.

I want to prepare the yams.

- (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} te \\ 'e \\ 'ua \end{bmatrix}$ hina'aro + subject + $\begin{bmatrix} 'e \\ 'ia \end{bmatrix}$ + verb + subject

This construction is used when the subject of the two verbs is different.

Examples:

Te hina'aro nei au 'e tauturu mai 'oe 'ia'u.

I want you to help me.

Te hina'aro nei 'oia 'ia hamani vau 'i te fare.

He wants me to build a house.

- (iii) negative + subject + verb + $\begin{bmatrix} 'i te + verb (past) \\ 'e + verb (present) \end{bmatrix}$

In the negative, when the subject of both verbs is the same, the pattern changes to the above. Examples:

'Aita vau 'i hina'aro 'i te haere.

I did not want to go.

* *Hina'aro* is also used with a noun object, such as:

'E hina'aro vau 'i tēra hei-pūpū.

I would like that shell necklace.

'Aita vau 'i hina'aro 'i te haere 'e tai'a.

I did not want to go fishing.

'E'ita vau 'e hina'aro 'e haere 'e tai'a.

I do not want to go fishing.

Otherwise, the normal negative sentence pattern is followed.

Example:

'E'ita vau 'e hina'aro 'ia ha'aparari 'oe 'i tā'u hapaina.

I do not want you to break my glass.

(iv) A less direct desiderative is formed by 'e ti'a, which corresponds approximately to "would you like to", "would they like", etc. Example:

'E ti'a anei 'ia 'oe 'ia himene?

Would you like to sing?

This construction is formal, and in conversation one would prefer:

'E nehenehe anei tā 'oe 'e himene?

Would you like to sing?

129. Necessitative

In Tahitian there are several degrees of compulsion expressed by the different forms of the necessitative.

- (i) $\begin{bmatrix} 'e \\ 'ia \\ 'ua \end{bmatrix} + \text{verb} + \begin{bmatrix} ihoa \\ ho'i \end{bmatrix} + \text{subject}$

This is the most common necessitative in conversational Tahitian. With present tense, 'e or 'ia may precede the verb, while 'ua indicates past tense. The verb stem is followed by ihoa or ho'i. Ihoa is stronger than ho'i. It should be observed that the ought/must distinction of English has no exact equivalent in Tahitian. Ihoa suggests "must", while ho'i would approximate to the English "ought".* Examples:

'E haere ihoa vau 'e rave mai 'i te farāoa.

I must go and get some bread.

'Ia tae ihoa tāua 'i te tahua taura'a manureva 'i te hora piti.

We two must be at the airport at two o'clock.

'Ua haere ihoa vau 'e rave mai 'i te farāoa.

I had to go and get some bread (and did so).

'E haere ho'i vau 'i te fare toa.

I must/ought to go to the shop.

* Real compulsion is rendered rather by the imperative in Tahitian. Ihoa simply means "indeed", and ho'i, "besides, so".

The prohibitive form is the same as the negative imperative. Thus:

'Eiaha ihoa 'oe 'e tāpū 'i te vahie.

You must not cut the wood.

- (ii) 'e mea + verb + $\begin{bmatrix} ihoa \\ ho'i \end{bmatrix}$ + subject

This is a necessitative form indicating that one should have done something, but did not. Example:

'E mea haere ihoa vau 'e rave mai 'i te farāoa.

I should have gone and got some bread.

- (iii) 'ia + verb + mau + subject ... 'e ti'a ai

This is the strongest necessitative apart from the imperative. It is generally restricted to the present tense, however. Examples:

'Ia 'amu mau vau 'e ti'a ai.

I really must eat.

Negative: 'Eiaha roa vau 'e 'amu.

I really must not eat.

- (iv) 'e mea maita'i + 'ia + verb

This is a weaker necessitative, approximating to the English "it is recommended". Example:

'E mea maita'i 'ia 'amu vau.

It would be well if I ate.

- (v) 'e mēa faufa'a + 'ia + verb

This translates "to need to", but with overtones of profit or gain. When this idea is absent, the normal necessitative is used. Examples:

'E mea faufa'a 'ia'u 'ia haere 'e ti'i 'i te moni.

I need to go and get some money.

'E 'ere 'i te mea faufa'a 'ia'u 'ia haere 'e ti'i 'i te moni.

I do not need to go and get some money.

When the object of "to need" is a noun, the desiderative hina'aro is used, as explained in §128.

130. Conditional

With real condition, the introducers of the conditional clause are:

- (i) mai te peu ē
(ii) mai te mea ē

Examples:

'E ta'iri vau 'ia 'oe, mai te peu ē 'e ha'aparari 'oe 'i tēra hapaina.
I shall hit you if you break that glass.

Mai te mea ē 'e haere mai 'oe 'ananahi, 'e horo'a ātu vau 'i te
tao'a nā 'oe.

If you come tomorrow I shall give you a present.

Both of the condition introducers may be used interchangeably with no distinction in meaning.

With unreal condition, that is, in sentences where the action expressed by the conditional verb does not actually take place, the introducer changes to *ahiri*. Example:

Ahiri vau 'i hamani 'i te 'aua, 'e'ore ia tā'u mau mā'a tanu 'e
'amu hia 'e te pua'atoro.

If I had built a fence, my vegetables would not have been eaten by the cattle.

Note: *ahiri* or *ahiri ē*, may also be used instead of condition introducers in translating real condition, but not often in conversational Tahitian.

The English "would have . . . if" is rendered in Tahitian by 'e mea + verb, followed by *ahiri*. Example:

'E mea tāpū vau 'i te vahie, ahiri 'oe 'e horo'a mai 'i te moni
maita'i nā'u.

I would have cut the wood if you had paid me well.

131. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'E'ita vau 'e hina'aro 'ia ha'aparari 'oe i tā'u hapaina.
2. Te hina'aro nei te ta'ata 'ia tauturu 'oe 'iāna.
3. 'E hina'aro rātou 'e hamani 'i te fare.
4. 'Aita tātou 'e hina'aro 'e 'āu.
5. 'E haere ihoa vau 'e ti'i 'i te moni.
6. 'Eiaha roa 'oe 'e ta'iri noa ātu 'i tēra 'uri.
7. 'Ia haere mai ihoa 'oe 'e tāmā'a.
8. 'E hina'aro vau 'i te peni-pāpa'i.
9. 'E mea haere ho'i au 'e ti'i 'i te moni.
10. Mai te peu ē 'e maita'i te mahāna 'ananahi, 'e haere tāua 'i te pae miti.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. I must go now.
2. I do not want to go to town.
3. He wants an orange.
4. I must go to the shop.
5. You must not go swimming today.
6. The girls must go and get the bread.
7. They (pl.) want to buy a boat.
8. They two want me to build a boat.
9. You must not break that glass.
10. If that dog eats my fowls, I shall kill him.

132. Fishing

Vocabulary:

fa'a'ite

to explain

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>te huru</i> | the way, method |
| <i>te 'ohipa</i> | the work |
| <i>te rava'āi</i> | the fishing |
| <i>te 'upe'a</i> | the net |
| <i>te pae ā'au</i> | the edge of the reef |
| <i>tu'u</i> | to deposit, put in, put down |
| <i>tīahi</i> | to chase |
| <i>'i roto</i> | into |
| <i>fa'a'ati</i> | to close (a net), accompany |
| <i>pou</i> | to descend |
| <i>'i muri iho</i> | after that, next |
| <i>te miti</i> | the sea |
| <i>taui</i> | to change |
| <i>te vāhi</i> | the place, area |
| <i>te tāi'ara'a</i> | the fishing |
| <i>te pae moana</i> | the edge of the lagoon |
| <i>fa'ahou</i> | again |
| <i>pātia</i> | to spear (a fish) |

Translate:

'I teie mahāna 'e piti 'ahuru nō fepuare matahiti tauatini 'e iva hanere 'e ōno 'ahuru ma va'u te hina'aro nei 'o Teri 'i tāne 'ia fa'a'ite vau 'iāna 'i te huru nō te 'ohipa rava'āi 'i Tahiti. 'E fa'a'ite ātu vau 'iāna 'i te huru nō te rava'āi 'upe'a nā te pae ā'au. 'E raverahi mau va'a 'e haere nā te pae ā'au. 'E tu'u rātou 'i te 'upe'a nā te pae ā'au mai te tīahi mai 'i te 'i'a 'i roto 'i te 'upe'a. 'I reira, 'e fa'a'ati hia te 'upe'a. 'I muri iho, 'e pou rātou 'i roto 'i te miti nō te rave mai 'i te 'i'a, 'a tu'u ātu ai 'i roto 'i te mau va'a.

'I muri iho 'i te reira, 'e tau'i rātou 'i te vāhi tāi'ara'a. 'E haere rātou 'i te pae moana 'e tu'u fa'ahou 'i tā rātou 'upe'a. Te mau va'a fa'a'ati, nā rātou 'e haere 'e tīahi mai 'i te 'i'a 'i roto 'i te 'upe'a. 'I muri iho 'e pou rātou 'i roto 'i te miti nō te pātia mai 'i te 'i'a. 'I muri iho 'a tu'u ātu ai 'i roto 'i te mau va'a.

Lesson 24

CONJUNCTIONS

133. Usage

This final lesson discusses the usage of the most usual conjunctions in Tahitian which have not already been treated above. Some conjunctions are:

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>'aore ra</i> | or | <i>'e riro paha</i> | perhaps |
| <i>'ia 'ore ra</i> | otherwise, lest | <i>'oia ho'i</i> | namely, that is |
| <i>'aita ra</i> | otherwise | <i>nō reira</i> | therefore |
| <i>tēra ra</i> | but, however | <i>noa ātu ā</i> | although |
| <i>āre'a ra</i> | however | <i>e</i> | and |
| <i>'e paha</i> | perhaps | <i>auā'e</i> | fortunately |

Examples of usage are as follows:

'i te mahāna mā'a 'aore ra 'i te tapati
on Saturday or Sunday

te pua'atoro 'aore ra te pua'ahorofenua
the bull or the horse

'E rave maita'i tāua 'i te 'ohipa 'ia 'ore ra 'e'ita ia tā tāua puta
'e oti.

We two must work well; otherwise our book will not be finished.

'aita ra 'e'ita ia te fare 'e oti
otherwise the house would not have been finished

'Ua mana'o vau 'e haere 'e tanu 'i te taro, tēra ra 'ua mo'e tā'u ōpe.
I thought I would go and plant taros, but I have lost my shovel.

'E haere mai 'oia 'e riro paha 'i te tapati.

Perhaps he will come on Sunday.

'E riro paha 'oia 'i te haere mai.

Perhaps he will come.

te mau rātere, 'oia ho'i te mau feiā tei haere mai nō te māta'ita'i
the tourists, that is, the people who come to visit

Nō reira 'oia 'i haere ai 'e tunu 'i te mā'a.

Therefore, she went to prepare the food.

Noa ātu ā ia te mahāna, 'e to'eto'e noa.

Although the sun is shining it is still cold.

te tāūpo'o e te piripou
the hat and the trousers
Te haere ra vau 'e ta'oto; auā'e 'oe 'i tāniuniu mai.
I was just going to bed; fortunately you rang then.

134. Pearl-shell Diving

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>hopu</i> | to dive, bathe | <i>ī</i> | full, to fill |
| <i>te pārau</i> | the pearl-shell | <i>te taura</i> | the rope |
| <i>tupu</i> | to take place | <i>tā'amu</i> | to tie |
| <i>te 'ava'e</i> | the month | <i>te tapau</i> | the lead weight |
| <i>fa'a'ati</i> | to surround | <i>tae</i> | to arrive |
| <i>te ā'au</i> | the reef | <i>'oi'oi</i> | quickly |
| <i>'i ropu</i> | in the middle | <i>'i raro</i> | at the bottom |
| <i>te miti</i> | the sea | <i>fa'a'ite</i> | to signal, tell |
| <i>te va'a</i> | the outrigger canoe | <i>ho'i</i> | to return |
| <i>te purera'a</i> | the prayer | <i>hapono</i> | to send |
| <i>nā mua ā'e</i> | before | <i>te feiā-rave-</i> | the pearl-shell |
| <i>fa'aea</i> | to remain | <i>pārau</i> | merchants |
| <i>huti</i> | to pull up, pull | <i>roa'a</i> | to obtain |
| <i>te 'ete</i> | the basket | | |

Translate:

Te 'ohipa nō te hopura'a pārau 'e tupu ia 'i te mau fenua Tuamotu
'i te mau matahiti 'ato'a. 'E tupu te hopura'a pārau, 'e toru 'ava'e
te maorora'a 'aore ra 'e maha. 'Ua 'ite tātou te fenua Tuamotu, 'e
mea fa'a'ati hia 'oia 'e te ā'au. 'I ropu 'i te fenua te vai ra ia te miti.
E, 'i te reira vāhi 'e hopu hia ai te pārau.

Nō te haere 'e hopu 'i te pārau, 'e haere te mau ta'ata nā ni'a 'i tō
rātou mau va'a 'i ropu 'i te miti. 'Ia tae rātou 'i reira, 'e fa'aoti rātou
'i te purera'a nā mua ā'e 'a hopu ai. 'E piti ta'ata 'i ni'a 'i te va'a
hō'e, hō'e te hopu, e hō'e te fa'aea 'i ni'a iho 'i te va'a nō te huti mai 'i
te pārau 'o te fa'a'ihia mai 'e te ta'ata hopu. Teie ta'ata hopu, 'e hopu
'oia nā ni'a 'i te hō'e taura 'o tei tā'amu hia te tapau 'i ni'a iho, nō te,
mea, nā teie tapau 'i ni'a te taura 'e fa'atae 'oi'oi 'iāna 'i raro 'i te miti.
'Ia tae 'oia 'i raro, 'e rave 'oia 'i tāna 'ete 'e fa'a'i 'i te pārau. Ia 'i, e,
nō te fa'a'ite 'i te ta'ata huti 'i ni'a 'i te va'a, 'e huti 'oia 'e tcru hutira'a
'i ni'a 'i te taura. 'I te reira taime 'e ho'i mai 'oia 'i ni'a; 'e huti
'ato'a hia te 'ete pārau.

'Ia fa'aoti teie hopura'a pārau, 'e haponu hia ia te mau pārau nā te
mau feiā-rave-pārau 'i Pape'ete. E, 'i te reira taime ia tā rātou moni
'e roa'a mai ai.

FURTHER PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION

135. Tahiti

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>parau</i> | a word, to speak | <i>te mata'eina'a</i> | the district |
| <i>te motu</i> | the island | <i>te marae</i> | the temple |
| <i>te a'ihu'arā'au</i> | the department | <i>te vāhi</i> | the place, spot |
| <i>te fenua</i> | the land, country | <i>tanu</i> | to plant |
| <i>pū</i> | principal, main | <i>te tō</i> | the sugar-cane |
| <i>'oia ho'i</i> | namely | <i>te tihota</i> | the sugar |
| <i>te 'oire</i> | the town | <i>te ta'ata-pāpa'i-</i> | the artist |
| <i>te mata'i</i> | the wind | <i>hoho'a</i> | |
| <i>paraparau</i> | to converse, talk | <i>te fa'a'amura'a</i> | the breeding |
| <i>te huru</i> | the subject, manner | <i>te pua'atoro</i> | the cattle |
| <i>mana'o</i> | to think | <i>Niu Terani</i> | New Zealand |
| <i>reva</i> | to leave, depart | <i>te fa'arava'i</i> | the increase |
| <i>'apī</i> | new | <i>te ū</i> | the milk |
| <i>hamani</i> | to build | <i>te hotera</i> | the hotel |
| <i>te purumu</i> | the street | <i>tāmā'a</i> | to eat at table |
| <i>tātā'i</i> | to repair | <i>te 'otu'e</i> | the point, prom- ontory |
| <i>te tau</i> | the time, occasion | <i>te mōri-turama-</i> | the lighthouse |
| <i>riro</i> | to become | <i>āva</i> | |
| <i>māta'ita'i</i> | to look at, admire | <i>te ti'i</i> | the statue |
| <i>te rātere</i> | the tourist | <i>te 'o'o'a</i> | the bay |
| <i>'e raverahi</i> | many | <i>fa'ari'i</i> | to receive |
| <i>tae</i> | to arrive, come | <i>fa'atupu</i> | to organise |
| <i>Marite</i> | America | <i>te tāmā'ara'a</i> | the feast |
| <i>te ruperupe</i> | the beauty | <i>te taera'a</i> | the arrival |
| <i>'ite</i> | to see | <i>Ronetona</i> | London |
| <i>nā mua ā'e</i> | before | <i>fa'afa'aea</i> | to rest, stay |

Translate:

Teie te mau parau nō te mau motu a'ihu'arā'au Farāni nō Polinetia, 'oia ho'i 'o Tahiti te fenua pū, 'oia ho'i te 'oire nō Pape'ete. 'I muri

ā'e 'i te reira, te vai nei te mau motu nō ni'a mata'i, te mau motu Tuamotu, Ma'areva, Matuita, te mau motu nō raro mata'i, Ra'iātea, Borabora, Huahine, Maupiti. 'I teie nei 'e paraparau vau 'i te huru nō te fenua 'o Pape'ete, Tahiti.

'I Pape'ete 'ato'a te vai nei te tahi mau fare 'apī te hamani hia ra, te mau purumu te tātā'i hia ra. Nō reira, 'e nehenehe 'ia parau hia 'i teie mau tau 'i mua nei 'e riro ia te 'oire nō Pape'ete 'ei māta'ita'ira'a nā te mau feiā rātere; nō te mea 'e raverahi te mau feiā rātere 'e tae mai 'i Pape'ete, mai te fenua Marite mai, nō te fenua Farāni mai, Peretane mai, te fenua Europa mai, nō te māta'ita'i 'i te huru 'ō te ruperupe 'ō te fenua Tahiti.

Teie te mau 'ohipa 'e 'ite hia 'e te mau feiā rātere 'ia tae ātu rātou 'i Tahiti. Nā mua ā'e 'e tae rātou 'i te mata'eina'a nō Pa'ea, e 'ite rātou 'i te marae nō Arahurahu. 'Ei reira 'e tae ātu rātou 'i Atimaono, te vāhi matamua 'i tanu hia te tō nō te hamani 'i te tihota. 'E haere ātu rātou 'i Mataiea, Papeari. Tei reira te vāhi pū nō te ta'ata-pāpa'i-hoho'a 'o Paul Gaugin tāne. Mai reira 'e haere ātu rātou 'i Taravao. Tei reira te mau fa'a'amura'a pua'atoro rahi ā'e nō Tahiti. 'E mau pua'atoro nō te fenua Niu Terani mai, tei fa'atae hia mai 'i Tahiti nō te fa'arava'i 'i te ū nō Tahiti. Mai reira 'e tae ātu rātou 'i Afa'ahiti. Tei reira te hotera Faratea. 'E raverahi mau rātere 'e haere 'i reira 'e tāmā'a āi.

'E ho'i mai rātou 'i Pape'ete nā te mata'eina'a nō Hitia'a, Fa'aone, Papeno'o, Ha'apape. Hou rātou 'a tae ai 'i Pape'ete, 'e haere rātou 'i te 'otu'e nō Ha'apape, 'oia te Pointe Vénus. 'E māta'ita'i rātou 'i te mōri-turama-āva. Tei reira 'ato'a te ti'i 'ō te ta'ata Peretane ra 'o Captain Cook, tei tae mai 'i Tahiti 'i te matahiti tauatini 'e hitu hanere 'e ōno 'ahuru ma iva 'i te 'o'o'a nō Matavai. 'Ua fa'ari'i hia 'oia 'e te ari'i-vahine 'o Pomare maha. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira 'ua fa'atupu hia te hō'e tāmā'ara'a nō tō rātou taera'a mai. Te 'ite nei ia tātou ē, te mau feiā matamua 'i tae mai 'i Tahiti nei, 'e mau feiā nō Peretane mai. 'Ua rave 'ato'a rātou 'i te 'ohipa nō te Evaneria 'i Tahiti.

136. Things to do in Tahiti

Vocabulary:

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>'e aha te huru?</i> | how are things? |
| <i>fa'afa'aea</i> | to stop, cease |
| <i>te ūa</i> | the rain |
| <i>mai te peu ē</i> | if |
| <i>fa'a'ati</i> | to visit, tour |
| <i>te mata'eina'a</i> | the district |
| <i>te ruperupe</i> | the beauty |
| <i>'e raverahi</i> | there are many |
| <i>te rātere</i> | the tourist |
| <i>te mau motu raro mata'i</i> | the Iles Sous le Vent |
| <i>māta'ita'i</i> | to visit, admire |
| <i>āna'e</i> | also, as well |
| <i>te vāhi 'orira'a</i> | the nightclub (dancing) |
| <i>te vāhi himenera'a</i> | the night-spot (singing) |
| <i>e te vai ātura</i> | etcetera |
| <i>te 'ori</i> | the dance |
| <i>te himene</i> | the song |
| <i>maurūru</i> | thank you |
| <i>te fa'a'itera'a</i> | the information |
| <i>'e riro paha</i> | perhaps |
| <i>te fa'afa'aeara'a</i> | the stay, holiday |
| <i>te 'oa'oa</i> | the pleasure, delight |
| <i>mau</i> | true, real |

Translate:

“*E aha te huru 'i Tahiti nei 'i teie mau mahāna?*”

“*Mea maita'i. 'Ua fa'afa'aea ri 'i te ūa. Mea maita'i roa 'i teie mau mahāna.*”

“*E aha te 'ohipa tā'u 'e nehenehe 'e rave 'ananahi?*”

“*Mai te peu ē 'e'ita 'e ūa, 'e nehenehe ia tā 'oe 'e haere 'e fa'a'ati nā te mau mata'eina'a. 'Ei reira 'oe 'e 'ite ai 'i te ruperupe 'ō te fenua. 'E nehenehe 'ato'a 'oe 'e haere ātu 'i Mo'orea, nō te mea 'e raverahi mau rātere 'e haere nei 'i te reira vāhi. 'E nehenehe 'ato'a 'oe 'e haere roa ātu 'i te mau motu raro mata'i, 'oia ho'i 'o Huahine, Ra'iātea, Borabora, tei 'ia 'oe te hina'arora'a.*”

“*'E mea maita'i roa. 'Ananahi 'e ti'i mai 'oe 'ia'u; 'e haere tāua 'e māta'ita'i 'i te mau mata'eina'a. 'Ia mana'o vau 'e'ita ihoa 'e ūa 'ananahi. Nā reira ia, 'e haere mai 'oe 'e ti'i 'ia'u 'ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i 'i te hora hitu e te āfa.*”

“*E, 'e haere mai vau 'e ti'i 'ia 'oe 'ananahi. 'E haere tāua 'e fa'a'ati 'i Tahiti.*”

“*E aha āna'e ā te 'ohipa 'e rave hia 'i Tahiti nei?*”

“*I te pō, 'e nehenehe 'oe 'e haere 'e māta'ita'i 'e te mau vāhi 'orira'a, te mau vāhi himenera'a, mai te Bar Lea, te Hotera Ta'aone, te Pu'o'oro Plage, te Hotera Tahiti e te vai ātura. 'E nehenehe tā 'oe 'e haere 'e māta'ita'i 'ato'a 'i te mau 'ori nō te fenua nei, te 'ori Tahiti, te tamure, te pa'o'a, te hivinau, te aparima, e raverahi ātu ā.*”

“*Maurūru roa 'i tā 'oe fa'a'itera'a mai 'ia'u 'i te huru nō teie vāhi 'o Tahiti. Te mana'o nei vau 'e riro paha teie fa'afa'aeara'a tō'u 'i Tahiti 'i te mea 'oa'oa mau nā'u.*”

137. Planting Sweet Potatoes

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>tanu</i> | to plant | <i>ha'apo'i</i> | to cover up |
| <i>te 'umara</i> | the sweet potato | <i>'e nehenehe</i> | one can |
| <i>te 'ata</i> | the stalks, lianas | <i>pipi</i> | to water |
| <i>maoro</i> | for a long time | <i>te pape</i> | the water |
| <i>tupu</i> | to grow | <i>mai te peu ē</i> | if |
| <i>te 'apo'o</i> | the hole | <i>te mahāna</i> | the sun |
| <i>tu'u</i> | to put in, deposit | <i>te ārea</i> | the period |
| <i>'o</i> | to dig | <i>pa'ari</i> | to be hard, mature |
| <i>ha'aputu</i> | to heap up | <i>'aore ra</i> | or |
| <i>te repo</i> | the earth, soil | <i>te mā'a</i> | the fruit |
| <i>oti</i> | to finish | <i>tatara</i> | to dig up |

Translate:

Nō te tanu 'i te 'umara, 'e tāpū hia mai ia te 'ata 'ō te mau 'umara tei maoro te tupura'a. 'E hamani hia te mau 'apo'o nō te tanura'a 'i te 'ata 'umara. 'E tu'u hia tēra mau 'ata 'i roto 'i te mau 'apo'o tei 'o hia, e tei ha'aputu hia 'i te repo. 'Ia oti 'i te tu'u hia te 'ata 'umara 'i roto 'i te 'apo'o, 'e ha'apo'i hia 'oia. 'E nehenehe 'ia pipi hia 'i te pape te mau 'ata 'umara tanu 'apī, mai te peu ē 'aita 'e ūa, mai te peu ē 'e mea puai roa te mahāna.

Te taime tanura'a 'umara, tei roto ia 'i te ārea nō te 'ava'e mē, tiumu, tiurai. Te taime 'e nehenehe ai 'e 'amu 'i te 'umara, 'oia ho'i, 'i te taime 'e pa'ari ai 'oia, 'e pae 'aore ra 'e hitu 'ava'e te maorora'a 'e nehenehe 'ia 'amu hia te reira mau 'umara. 'Ia pa'ari te mā'a, 'e nehenehe 'ia tatara hia mai, mai roto mai 'i te repo.

138. The Eel's Hole

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| <i>te 'apo'o</i> | the hole | <i>te tau</i> | the time, period |
| <i>te puhi</i> | the eel | <i>te feiā tāi'a</i> | the fisherman |
| <i>te 'a'amu</i> | the legend | <i>te 'aito</i> | the champion |
| <i>pauroa</i> | all | <i>Ta'ari'i</i> | Taarii |
| <i>hoe</i> | to paddle | <i>pātia</i> | to spear |
| <i>nā ni'a</i> | in | <i>te toro'a</i> | the job, trade |
| <i>te va'a</i> | the canoe | <i>te hui ra'atira</i> | the people |
| <i>'amu</i> | to eat | <i>noa</i> | always |
| <i>te 'otu'e</i> | the promontory, point | <i>mana'o</i> | to think |
| <i>topa</i> | to give a name to | <i>ha'apohe</i> | to kill |
| <i>te i'oa</i> | the name | <i>ora</i> | to live |
| <i>te rahira'a</i> | the majority | <i>fa'ahou</i> | again |
| <i>'ato'a</i> | also | <i>te 'auri</i> | the spear |

Translate:

'I teie mahāna 'e parauparau vau 'i te 'a'amu nō te 'apo'o puhi. Te vai ra 'i te mau motu raro mata'i, 'oia ho'i 'o Taha'a, te mata'eina'a nō Poutoru, te hō'e puhi rahi roa; 'e 'amu noa 'oia 'i te mau ta'ata. Pauroa te mau ta'ata 'e hoe mai nā ni'a iho 'i te va'a, 'ia tae 'i tēra vāhi, 'oia ho'i te 'apo'o puhi, 'ei reira rātou 'e 'amu hia ai 'e tēra puhi. Te vai ra 'oia 'i te hō'e 'otu'e tei topa hia te i'oa te 'apo'o puhi, 'oia ho'i te 'otu'e 'ō 'apo'o puhi. E, nā reira te ta'ata te haere mai te mata'eina'a nā ni'a 'i te va'a, te rahira'a 'e 'amu hia ia 'e taua puhi ra.

Te vai 'ato'a ra 'i te reira tau 'e raverahi mau feiā tāi'a. Te 'aito 'i te reira tau nō te reira mata'eina'a 'o Ta'ari'i ia. 'E ta'ata-pātia-i'a tōna toro'a. Te 'ite nei te hui ra'atira nō teie mata'eina'a 'e 'amu noa teie puhi 'i te mau ta'ata 'e hoe nā ni'a 'i te va'a. 'Ua mana'o rātou 'i te hō'e mahāna 'e haere 'e pātia ha'apohe roa 'i te puhi, 'ia 'ore 'oia 'e 'amu fa'ahou 'i te mau ta'ata 'e hoe mai nā ni'a 'i te va'a nō te haere 'i te mata'eina'a.

'I te tahi mahāna 'ua haere mai 'o Ta'ari'i e tāna 'āuri. 'Ua 'ite 'oia 'i teie puhi tei rapae 'i tōna 'apo'o. 'Ua mana'o 'ona 'e pātia ha'apohe roa 'i teie puhi, 'ia ora te mau ta'ata 'e hoe nā ni'a 'i te va'a, 'e iaia rātou 'ia 'amu fa'ahou hia 'e tēra puhi. 'I te reira taime 'ua pātia ha'apohe roa 'oia 'i tēra puhi. Mai te reira taime te topara'a hia te i'oa 'ō taua 'otu'e ra, te 'otu'e 'ō 'apo'o puhi.

139. The Fourteenth of July

Vocabulary:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>riro</i> | to become |
| <i>te mahāna 'oa'oara'a</i> | the festival |
| <i>te hau</i> | the Republic, government |
| <i>fa'atupu</i> | to organise |
| <i>fa'ahanahana</i> | to celebrate |
| <i>te 'arearea</i> | the amusement |
| <i>te taviri</i> | the game |
| <i>fa'anehenehe</i> | to embellish, beautify |
| <i>ha'amata</i> | to start, commence |
| <i>te 'oro'a</i> | the feast, festival |
| <i>matarā</i> | to start |
| <i>'e tae ātu</i> | until |
| <i>te a'ahiāta</i> | the early morning, dawn |
| <i>te po'ipo'i</i> | the morning |
| <i>te ta'urua</i> | the feast, festival |
| <i>porote</i> | to walk in procession |
| <i>te nu'u</i> | the army |
| <i>putuputu</i> | to assemble |
| <i>te āroā</i> | the street, avenue |
| <i>te tavana rahi</i> | the Governor |
| <i>fa'aea</i> | to reserve, remain |
| <i>ha'apoupou</i> | to applaud |
| <i>te feiā porote</i> | the members of the procession |
| <i>te tai</i> | the navy |
| <i>te reva</i> | the air force |
| <i>tere</i> | to go past |
| <i>te muto'i</i> | the police |
| <i>te pupu</i> | the group |
| <i>te fa'ehau</i> | the soldier |
| <i>te himene</i> | the song |
| <i>te 'ote'a</i> | the dance |
| <i>te mau feiā fa'a'eta'eta tino</i> | the athletes |
| <i>te mau feiā tu'epopo</i> | the footballers |
| <i>te mau feiā taorapopo</i> | the basketballer |
| <i>te fa'aro'o</i> | the religion |
| <i>te porotetani</i> | the Protestants |
| <i>te tatorita</i> | the Catholics |
| <i>te momoni</i> | the Mormons |
| <i>te tanito</i> | the Sanito Church |
| <i>te petania</i> | the Bethany Church |
| <i>te fare ha'api'ira'a</i> | the school |

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>fa'ari'i</i> | to receive |
| <i>te hui mana</i> | the officials |
| <i>te inuinura'a</i> | the drink, toast |
| <i>te 'orira'a hanahana</i> | the grand ball |
| <i>te peretiteni</i> | the Presidency |
| <i>te hoera'a-va'a</i> | the canoe race |
| <i>te ta'ahira'a-pere'o'o</i> | the bicycle race |
| <i>te fa'ahorora'a</i> | the race |
| <i>te pua'ahorofenua</i> | the horse |
| <i>te mahāna hope'a</i> | the last day |
| <i>'opani</i> | to close, finish |

Translate:

Te parau nō te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai.

Te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai 'ua riro ia 'ei mahāna 'oa'oara'a nā te hau Farāni. Nō reira 'i te fenua Tahiti 'e fa'atupu 'ato'a hia te mahāna 'oro'a nō te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai. Nō te fa'ahanahanara'a 'i te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai 'i Tahiti, 'e hamani hia ia te mau fare 'areareara'a, te mau fare tavirira'a nā te mau vāhi 'ato'a 'ō te 'oire, mai te fa'anehenehe hia 'i te mau tiare 'ato'a 'ō te fenua.

'Ia tae 'i te 'ahuru ma toru nō tiurai, te mahāna ia 'e ha'amata ai te mau 'oro'a, te hora 'e matara ai te mau fare tiurai, mai te hora 'ahuru ma piti ia nō te 'ahuru ma toru nō tiurai 'e tae ātu 'i te hora piti 'i te a'ahiāta. 'Ia po'ipo'i ā'e 'oia ho'i te 'ahuru ma maha, te mahāna rahi nō te ta'urua, 'i te hora va'u 'i te po'ipo'i 'e tupu ia te porotera'a ā te mau nu'u huru rau e raverahi ātu ā. 'I te po'ipo'i 'ahuru ma mahā nō tiurai 'i te hora va'u, 'e putuputu pauroa te mau ta'ata 'i te vāhi porotera'a, 'oia ho'i 'i te āroā Bruat. 'Ia haere mai te tavana rahi 'ō te fenua 'i tōna vāhi fa'aeara'a nō te ha'apoupou 'i te mau feiā porote, 'e tere mai ia 'i te reira taime te mau mōto nō te mau muto'i farāni. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira, te mau pupu fa'ehau huru rau tō te fenua, tō te tai e tō te reva. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira, 'e porote mai te mau pupu himene, te mau pupu 'ote'a, te mau pupu fa'a'eta'etara'a tino, te pupu tu'epopo, taorapopo e raverahi ātu ā. 'E porote 'ato'a mai te mau pupu nō te mau fa'aro'o 'ato'a, 'oia ho'i te porotetani, tatorita, te momoni, te tanito, te petania. 'E porote 'ato'a ho'i te mau tamari 'i nō te mau fare ha'api'ira'a 'ato'a.

'Ia oti te porotera'a, 'e fa'ari'i mai te tavana rahi 'i te mau hui mana 'ato'a nō te hō'e inuinura'a. 'I te reira taime 'e matara ia te mau fare 'areareara'a, te mau fare tavirira'a nō te tiurai 'e tae roa ātu 'i te hora ōno 'i te po'ipo'i. 'I te reira 'ato'a pō, 'e tupu ia te 'orira'a hanahana mai te peretiteni hia 'e te tavana rahi 'ō te fenua.

Te ta'urua nō tiurai 'e tupu ia, 'e piti hepetoma te maorora'a. 'E raverahi mau 'ohipa 'e rave hia 'i roto 'i te reira nau hepetoma 'e

piti, te mau 'ote'a, te mau himene, te mau hoera'a-va'a, te mau ta'ahira'a-pere'o'o, te fa'ahorora'a pua'ahorofenua. 'E rave hia ia 'i roto 'i te reira nau hepetoma 'e piti. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira, te mahāna hope'a nō te piti 'ō te hepetoma 'o te 'opanira'a ia te ta'urua rahi nō tiurai, 'oia ho'i te 'oro'a rahi ā te hau Farāni.

140. Orange-picking

Vocabulary:

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>pafa'i</i> | to pick, pluck |
| <i>te 'anani</i> | the orange |
| <i>te fa'a</i> | the valley |
| <i>te tau</i> | the season |
| <i>mātau</i> | to be accustomed |
| <i>ti'i</i> | to pick |
| <i>'i roto</i> | in, inside |
| <i>'i te po'ipo'i roa</i> | early in the morning |
| <i>te pūte</i> | the bag |
| <i>te 'ahu</i> | the clothes |
| <i>nō te mea</i> | because |
| <i>'i uta</i> | at the bottom |
| <i>te ārea</i> | the period |
| <i>haere nā raro noa</i> | to go on foot |
| <i>te vāhi</i> | the place |
| <i>fa'afa'aea</i> | to rest |
| <i>fa'ahou</i> | once more, again |
| <i>huru ātea ātu</i> | further away |
| <i>te ūru 'anani</i> | the orange plantation |
| <i>te parara'a</i> | the ripening |
| <i>'i ni'a</i> | on |
| <i>te tumu</i> | the tree |
| <i>re'are'a</i> | yellow |
| <i>pa'uma</i> | to climb up |
| <i>fa'a'i</i> | to fill |
| <i>'oa'oa</i> | pleasure, pleasant |
| <i>te ruperupe</i> | the beauty |
| <i>te haviti mau</i> | the true splendour |
| <i>hi'o</i> | to look at |
| <i>pou</i> | to descend |
| <i>'i raro</i> | down |
| <i>mai te āmo mai</i> | while carrying |
| <i>āmo</i> | to carry on the shoulders |
| <i>'i muri iho</i> | after, after that, next |
| <i>'a tae roa ātu</i> | until, as far as |
| <i>papū</i> | flat |
| <i>'oia ho'i</i> | namely |

Translate:

Te pafa'ira'a 'anani 'i te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u Tahiti. 'Ia tae 'i te tau nō te pafa'ira'a 'anani nō te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u 'i te mata'eina'a nō Puna'aui, 'e haere te mau ta'ata 'ato'a tei mātau 'i te haere 'e ti'i

'i te'anani 'i roto 'i te reira fa'a. 'E haere rātou 'i te po'ipo'i roa e tā rātou mau pūte e tō rātou mau 'ahu e te 'ahu ta'oto nō te pō, nō te mea 'ia haere 'e pafa'i 'i te 'anani 'i te reira fa'a, 'e ta'oto ia te mau ta'ata 'i uta. 'Ia po'ipo'i, 'ei reira rātou 'e pafa'i ai 'i te 'anani. Te tau nō te pafa'ira'a 'anani nō Puna'aru'u, tei roto ia 'i te ārea nō te 'ava'e mē, tiumu, tiurai, atete.

'E haere rātou 'i te po'ipo'i roa nā raro noa. 'I te āhiāhi 'ua tae ia rātou 'i te vāhi fa'afa'aeara'a. 'I te reira taimē 'e tāmā'a ri'i rātou e ta'oto, e, 'ia po'ipo'i ā'e, 'e haere fa'ahou rātou 'i te tahi vāhi huru ātea ātu, e, tei reira te ūru 'anani nō te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u.

'Ia tae 'i te parara'a nō te 'anani, 'e mea rahi roa te 'anani 'i ni'a 'i te tumu. 'E re'are'a noa 'i ni'a 'i te mau tumu. 'Ia tae te mau ta'ata 'i te reira vāhi, 'e pa'uma rātou nō te pafa'i 'i te 'anani e nō te fa'a'i tā rātcu mau pūte. 'E raverahi mau ta'ata 'e haere, nō te mea 'e mea 'oa'oa nā rātou 'i te haere 'i roto 'i te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u nō tōna ruperupe e te haviti mau 'ia hi'o hia.

'Ia oti tā rātou pafa'ira'a 'anani, 'e pou mai rātou 'i raro, mai te āmo mai 'i te 'anani tā rātou 'i pafa'i mai. 'E mea huru ātea 'ia haere. 'E raverahi mau taimē 'e fa'afa'aea rātou. 'I muri iho, 'e haere fa'ahou, 'a tae roa ātu ai 'i te vāhi papū, 'oia ho'i 'i te mata'eina'a nō Puna'auia.

141. The Apetahi Flower

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|----------|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| te parau | the word, description | mai | like, as |
| te tiare | the flower | mahora | to spread open |
| apetahi | name of a flower | po'o'a | to make a noise |
| āre'a ra | however | 'uo'uo | white |
| tupu | to grow, exist | matie | green |
| āna'e | only | te a'ahiāta | the dawn |
| te mou'a | the mountain | fa'aro'o | to listen to |
| pafa'i | to pick, gather | ē | different |
| te 'u'ā | the bloom | mātau | to be used to |

Translate:

Te vai ra ia 'e raverahi te mau tiare; āre'a ra 'i te motu nō Ra'iātea te vai ra ia te hō'e tiare 'e'ita 'e tupu 'i te mau vāhi 'ato'a; 'oia ho'i te tiare apetahi. Taua tiare ra, tei te fenua Ra'iātea āna'e ia.

Te vāhi tei reira tēra tiare, tei ni'a ia 'i te mou'a ra 'ō Temehani. 'E raverahi mau ta'ata 'e haere 'i te tahi mau taimē 'e pafa'i mai 'i teie tiare, 'oia ho'i te tiare apetahi, nō te mea 'e 'ere tōna 'u'ā mai tō te mau tiare 'ato'a. 'Ia mahora tōna 'u'ā 'i te po'ipo'i, 'e po'o'a 'oia. 'Ia mahora mai, 'e mahora 'oia mai te rima ta'ata. 'E tiare nehenehe roa, mea 'uo'uo 'ō mua, e, 'e mea matie 'ō raro ā'e mai.

Nō te haere 'e ti'i 'i teie tiare, 'e haere ia te ta'ata 'i te po'ipo'i roa nō te tae ātu 'i te vāhi pafa'ira'a 'i te pō. 'Ei reira rātou 'e ta'oto ai. E 'ia a'ahiāta, 'e haere rātou 'i piha'i iho 'i teie mau tiare nō te fa'aro'o 'i te po'o'ara'a mai, nō te mea 'ia mahora tō rātou 'u'ā 'e po'o'a 'oia. 'E tiare maere rahi mau teie. 'E 'ere 'oia mai te mau tiare 'ato'a tei mātau hia 'e te ta'ata.

142. House-building

Vocabulary:

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i>hamani</i> | to build |
| <i>te fare</i> | the house |
| <i>te ni'au</i> | the coconut tree leaves |
| <i>ma'ohi</i> | Polynesian |
| <i>te tumu</i> | the trunk of a tree |
| <i>te pou</i> | the post |
| <i>tāpo'i</i> | to cover |
| <i>te 'ofe</i> | the bamboo |
| <i>ha'une</i> | to weave |
| <i>te paruru</i> | the wall, screen |
| <i>te 'opani</i> | the door |
| <i>te ha'amaramarama</i> | the window |
| <i>te tumu ha'ari</i> | the trunk of a coconut tree |
| <i>te rā'au</i> | the tree |
| <i>'afaro</i> | straight |
| <i>te purau</i> | a kind of tree (<i>Hibiscus tiliaceous</i>) |
| <i>te 'aho</i> | the rafter |
| <i>fa'ati'a</i> | to sink a post, to agree |
| <i>tāmau</i> | to attach, make fast |
| <i>te tahua</i> | the floor |
| <i>tu'u</i> | to put in |
| <i>poto</i> | short |
| <i>āto</i> | to thatch |

Translate:

Te hamanira'a 'i te hō'e fare Tahiti, 'oia ho'i te fare ni'au. Nō te hamani 'i te hō'e fare ma'ohi, 'e tāpū hia ia te ni'au; 'e tāpū 'ato'a hia te tumu ha'ari. 'E rave hia te mau tumu nō te hamani 'i te pou nō te fare. 'E rave hia te mau ni'au nō te tāpo'i 'i te fare. 'E tāpū 'ato'a hia te 'ofe, 'e ha'une hia nō te hamani 'i te paruru nō te fare, te 'opani e te mau ha'amaramarama.

Nō te hamanira'a 'i te mau pou 'e rave hia ia te mau tumu ha'ari. Nō te tāpo'i 'i te fare, 'e ha'une hia ia te ni'au. E 'ia oti, 'e tāpo'i hia ia te fare 'i te mau ni'au ha'une hia. 'E tāpū 'ato'a hia te mau rā'au 'afaro, 'oia ho'i te mau rā'au purau e, 'e raverahi ātu ā, nō te hamani 'i te 'aho 'ō te fare. 'Ia oti te mau pou 'i te fa'ati'a hia, 'e tāmau hia ia te mau 'aho. 'Ia oti te reira, e āto hia ia te fare. 'I muri iho 'e hamani hia te tahua 'ō te fare. 'E tu'u hia te mau pou potopoto nā roto, e, 'e tāmau hia te tahua 'i te 'ofe 'o tei ha'une hia. 'E tāmau hia te mau paruru 'ofe, te mau ha'amaramarama e te mau 'opani. 'Ua oti ia 'i teie nei te hō'e fare ma'ohi.

143. Fishing with Stones

Vocabulary:

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>te tautai</i> | fishing |
| <i>taora</i> | to throw |
| <i>te 'ofa'i</i> | the stone |
| <i>tā'a</i> | to fish |
| <i>te tau</i> | the time |
| <i>fa'atupu</i> | to organise |
| <i>fa'ari'i</i> | to receive, welcome |
| <i>te hui ra'atira</i> | the population |
| <i>te himene</i> | the song |
| <i>te 'ori</i> | the dance |
| <i>te tāmā'ara'a</i> | the feast |
| <i>fa'a'ati</i> | to visit, tour |
| <i>māta'ita'i</i> | to observe, admire |
| <i>fa'anaho</i> | to organise |
| <i>tāmau</i> | to wear, put on |
| <i>te hei</i> | the crown of flowers |
| <i>te 'arapo'a</i> | the neck, throat |
| <i>te pareu</i> | the loin-cloth |
| <i>rau</i> | diverse, numerous |
| <i>te 'aia</i> | the enclosure |
| <i>ātea</i> | far, distant |
| <i>tiahi</i> | to chase |
| <i>horo</i> | to run |
| <i>te tahatai</i> | the shore |
| <i>pata</i> | to take a photo |
| <i>te hoho'a</i> | the photo |
| <i>taviri</i> | to film |
| <i>'ana'anatae</i> | pleasing, eager, enthusiastic |

Translate:

Te tautai taora 'i te fenua Borabora. 'E tupu ia teie huru tā'ara'a 'i te mau mahāna 'e raverahi te mau rātere 'e haere 'i te fenua Borabora. 'I te reira taime 'e fa'atupu hia te hō'e fa'ari'ira'a 'i te mau rātere nā te hui ra'atira nō Borabora, 'oia ho'i, te mau himene, te mau 'ori e te mau tāmā'ara'a Tahiti. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e haere te mau rātere 'e fa'a'ati 'i te fenua Borabora. 'Ia oti, 'e haere rātou 'e māta'ita'i 'i te huru nō te 'ohipa 'ō te tautai taora 'i Borabora.

Teie te fa'anahora'a nō teie huru tautai. 'E haere pauroa te mau hui ra'atira nō Borabora, te tāne e te vahine mai te tāmau mai 'i te hei 'i ni'a 'i te ūpo'o, 'i te 'arapo'a, mai te tāmau 'ato'a mai 'i te mau pareu, 'ua rau te huru. 'I te reira taime 'e haere rātou 'i roto 'i te miti nō te hamani 'i te hō'e 'aia 'ofa'i. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e haere ia te

hui ra'atira ta'ato'a, te tāne, te vahine, te mau tamari'i 'i te hō'e vāhi ātea ma te taora 'i te 'ofa'i 'i roto 'i te miti nō te tīahi 'i te i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aia. 'I te reira taime 'e horo pauroa te i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aia 'i te pae tahatai.

'I reira te mau rātere 'e haere mai ia 'e māta'ita'i 'i te mau i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aia ma te pata 'i te hoho'a, ma te taviri 'i te hoho'a nō teie huru tautai. 'E nehenehe tā te mau rātere pa'ato'a 'e haere 'i roto 'i te 'aia i'a, ma te rave mai 'i te i'a tā rātou 'e hina'aro. Nō teie huru tautai 'i te fenua Borabora 'e mea 'ana'anatae roa ia nā te mau rātere. E nō reira 'e raverahi te mau rātere 'e haere 'i te fenua Borabora nō te māta'ita'i 'i teie huru tai'ara'a.

144. The Breadfruit Legend

Vocabulary:

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|--------------|------------------------|
| te 'a'amu | the legend | pahono | to answer |
| te 'uru | the breadfruit | ta'i | to cry |
| te tau | the time | fa'ahou | again |
| matamua | first | roa'a | to be obtained |
| pohe | to die | ha'apohe | to cause to die |
| toe | to remain | riro | to become |
| āna'e | alone | te tumu 'uru | the breadfruit tree |
| fa'a'apu | to cultivate | hotu | to produce, bear fruit |
| te mou'a | the mountain | | |
| 'imi | to gather, collect | āra | to wake up |
| ō'e | to be in a state of famine | tupu | to be present, grow |
| fifi | to be in difficulties | 'i | to be full |
| te pae tahatai | the sea-shore | 'oa'oa | to be happy |
| mihi | to weep, lament | auā'e | fortunately |
| noa | always | te tino | the body |

Translate:

'I te tau matamua te vai ra ia te hō'e metua vahine, 'ua pohe tāna tāne, e, 'e mea rahi roa tāna mau tamari'i. 'I te reira tau, 'oia ho'i 'i te tau matamua 'i te pohera'a tāna tāne, 'ua toe noa mai 'oia āna'e iho e tāna mau tamari'i. Nō reira, nō te fa'a'amura'a 'i tāna mau tamari'i 'e haere 'oia 'e fa'a'apu nō te tanu 'i te mā'a. Nā mua ā'e, nā tāna ia tāne 'e haere 'e fa'a'apu, e 'e 'imi 'i te mā'a nō te fa'a'amu 'ia rātou. 'I teie nei 'ua pohe te tāne ā taua vahine ra; nāna ātura ia 'e 'imi 'i te mā'a.

'I taua tau ra 'ua ō'e pauroa te fenua 'i te mā'a. 'Ua fifi roa teie vahine e tāna mau tamari'i, nō te mea te ō'e nei 'e rātou 'i te mā'a. 'I te tahi mahāna 'ua haere 'oia 'i te pae tahatai e 'ua mihi noa 'oia 'i tāna tāne.

'I te reira taime 'ua haere mai te hō'e ta'ata. 'Ua parau ātu 'iāna "e aha tā 'oe 'e mihi nei?"

'Ua pahono ātu teie vahine: "te mihi nei vau nō te mea 'aita tā mātou 'e mā'a fa'ahou."

'Ua parau ātura teie ta'ata, "I teie nei, 'eiaha 'oe 'e mihi nō te mea 'e roa'a tā 'outou mā'a." 'I te reira taime 'ua parau taua ta'ata ra 'i teie vahine: "eiaha roa 'oe 'e mihi fa'ahou, nō te mea, 'ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i, 'ia āra mai 'oe, 'e 'ite 'oe 'i te hō'e tumu 'uru 'i mua 'i tō 'oe fare. Tauga tumu 'uru ra, 'o tō'u ia tino 'o tā'u 'i fa'ariro 'ei tumu 'uru, 'ia ora 'oe e tā 'oe mau tamari'i."

'I te po'ipo'i ā'e 'i te ārara'a mai teie vahine, ua tupu te tumu 'uru 'e te hotu noa ra. 'Ua 'i roa 'i te mā'a. 'Ua 'oa'oa roa teie vahine nō te mea auā'e teie ta'ata 'i 'amu ai rātou 'i te mā'a nō te mea 'ua fa'ariro teie ta'ata 'i tōna tino 'ei tumu 'uru. Nō reira mai, te 'a'amu nō te tumu 'uru, 'oia ho'i te 'uru.

145. The Lepers' Feast Day

Vocabulary:

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| te repera | the leper |
| te 'oro'a | the feast, celebration |
| parau | to call, speak |
| hou 'a | before |
| te tauiha'a | the present, gift |
| hopoi | to send |
| te pū | the centre |
| te ha'uti | the toy |
| te tuha'a | the part |
| fa'ahanahana | to honour |
| ha'amata | to open |
| te fa'ata'ira'a pū | the fanfare |
| te fa'ehau | the soldier |
| fa'ahou | again, once more |
| pahono | to reply |
| tomo | to enter, come in |
| te fa'aro'o | the religion, sect |
| te pupu | the group |
| te āhiāhi | the evening |
| te pupu fa'a'arearea | the orchestra |
| 'opani | to close, end |
| te ta'a'era'a | the farewell |
| fa'aoti | to conclude |
| ho'i | to return |

Translate:

Te parau nō te mau repera nō Orofara Tahiti. 'E tupu 'i Tahiti 'i te mau matahiti 'ato'a te hō'e 'oro'a nō te mau repera nō Tahiti, 'oia ho'i nō Orofara. 'E parau hia taua mahāna ra, te mahāna 'ō te mau repera. Hou 'a tupu ai teie 'oro'a rahi, 'e raverahi ia mau tauiha'a 'e hopoi hia 'i te pū nō Orofara, te vāhi tei reira te mau repera. 'E horo'a hia nā rātou 'e raverahi mau mā'a, te mau tauiha'a 'e tae roa ātu 'i te mau ha'uti nā te mau tamari 'i, 'oia 'ato'a ho'i te mau tuha'a moni.

'Ia tae 'i taua mahāna 'oro'a ra, 'e haere ia te Tavana Rahi 'i Orofara nō te fa'ahanahana 'i te 'oro'a ā te mau repera. 'I te reira po'ipo'i 'e ha'amata hia ia te 'oro'a nā roto 'i te hō'e fa'ata'ira'a pū ā te mau fa'ehau. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e paraparau mai te Tavana Rahi, mai te pahono hia ātu 'e te Tavana nō Orofara. 'E paraparau fa'ahou te Tavana Rahi nō te pahonora'a 'i te Tavana nō Orofara. 'Ia oti te reira, 'o te mau himene ia nā tō Orofara. 'I muri iho, 'e tomo mai te mau huru fa'aro'o 'ato'a, te mau pupu himene nō te fa'ahanahana 'i te 'oro'a ā te mau repera 'e tae roa ātu 'i te āhiāhi.

'I taua mahāna 'ato'a ra, 'e raverahi mau himene 'e himene hia mai 'e te mau repera iho nō Orofara, 'oia 'ato'a ho'i te mau pupu fa'a'arearea nō te 'oire nō Pape'ete, te mau pupu himene, e te 'ori, 'oia ho'i te pupu Heiva, te pupu Maeva Tahiti, te pupu Tahiti Nui, e te pupu Paulina nō te haere mai 'e fa'ahanahana 'i taua 'oro'a ra. 'E himene 'ato'a mai ia te mau pupu fa'aro'o huru rau. Nō te 'opanira'a 'i teie 'oro'a 'e paraparau fa'ahou ia te tavana nō Orofara, mai te ha'amaurūru hia ātu 'e te Tavana Rahi. 'Ia oti, 'e himene hia mai te himene nō te ta'a'era'a nā te pupu iho nō Orofara, e, 'o te fa'aotira'a ia te 'oro'a 'ō te mau repera. 'I te reira taimē 'e ho'i pauroa te mau ta'ata 'i te 'oire nō Pape'ete. 'O te huru ia te mau fa'anahora'a nō te 'oro'a 'ō te mau repera 'i Tahiti.

KEY TO EXERCISES

§14(a)

1. The house. 2. The men. 3. A dog. 4. Another man. 5. The hands. 6. A few men. 7. A few houses. 8. Mr Peu. 9. The bitch. 10. The boar. 11. The bitch (with litter). 12. The rooster. 13. The pawpaw (female). 14. The other houses. 15. Mrs Terii. 16. The breed of dogs. 17. The shoal of fish. 18. The bundle of food. 19. The bunch of breadfruit. 20. The bunch of flowers. 21. The Peu family. 22. The troop of men. 23. The bunch of mangoes. 24. The bunch of coconuts. 25. The bundle of breadfruit.

§14(b)

1. *Te ta'ata.* 2. *Te mau ta'ata.* 3. *Te hō'e 'uri.* 4. *Na metua.* 5. *Na rima.* 6. *Tau na ta'ata.* 7. *Na parahira'a.* 8. *Teri'i tāne.* 9. *Te 'uri ufa.* 10. *Te pua'a maia'a.* 11. *Te 'uri fanau'a.* 12. *Te pinia mamoe.* 13. *Te mau 'uri ōni.* 14. *Te moa ufa.* 15. *Tau na moa ufa.* 16. *Te hō'e nana mamoe.* 17. *Te hō'e pu'e tamāhine.* 18. *Te hō'e nana 'uri.* 19. *Te atari mai'a.* 20. *Te hō'e ruru vahie.* 21. *Te hō'e pupā tiare.* 22. *Te hui mana.* 23. *Te feiā tai'a.* 24. *Peu mā.* 25. *Te hō'e pupā vi.*

§22(a)

1. There are three men. 2. Three dogs. 3. There are three fish. 4. There are twenty men. 5. There are two men. 6. The fifth night. 7. How many fish are there? 8. There are six. 9. The sixth girl. 10. It is twelve o'clock. 11. It is ten past three. 12. It is half past seven. 13. The sixth of March. 14. It is two minutes to five. 15. Next week.

§22(b)

1. *'E toru tau na ta'ata.* 2. *Na 'uri 'e maha.* 3. *'Ehia ta'ata tēra?* 4. *'E piti ta'ata.* 5. *Te ōno 'ō te pō.* 6. *'E hora piti e te āfa.* 7. *'E ōno miniti toe 'e hora toru ai.* 8. *'E hora maha ma'iri 'e iwa miniti.* 9. *'E piti 'ahuru ma ōno ta'ata.* 10. *Te maha nō Titema.* 11. *Te 'ahuru ma hō'e nō Mē.* 12. *'I te matahiti 'i mua.* 13. *Te mahāna*

matamua nō Eperera. 14. 'E hō'e 'ahuru miniti toe 'e hora ōno ai.
15. Ōno 'ahuru ha'ari.

§29(a)

1. Beautiful hands. 2. The good dogs. 3. The long outrigger canoes. 4. The very good dog. 5. There are two good dogs. 6. There are seven beautiful houses. 7. The shorter man. 8. The bad men. 9. The pig is bigger than the dog. 10. Peu's house is smaller than yours.

§29(b)

1. *Te fare nehenehe.* 2. *Te mau fare nehenehe.* 3. *Te 'uri maita'i.*
4. *'E tau na va'a roroa.* 5. *Te 'uri maita'i roa ā'e.* 6. *Te 'uri maita'i roa.*
7. *'E va'u mau ta'ata 'i'ino.* 8. *'Ua faito noa te rahi 'ō te 'uri 'i te pua'a.*
9. *'E mea hu'a ā'e te 'uri 'i te pua'a.* 10. *'E mea rahi ā'e te pua'a 'i te 'uri.*

§35(a)

1. This very good dog. 2. That short man. 3. That beautiful house. 4. Those beautiful girls. 5. This beautiful girl. 6. That bad man. 7. Those few bad men. 8. Those dogs. 9. That dog. 10. This shorter man.

§35(b)

1. *Teie fare nehenehe.* 2. *Teie mau 'uri nehenehe.* 3. *Teie na rima haviti.*
4. *Tēra 'uri rahi.* 5. *Tēra mau va'a roroa.* 6. *Teie tau na ta'ata rahi.*
7. *Teie tamāroa iti.* 8. *Tēna nau 'uri maitata'i 'e maha.* 9. *Tēra mimi iti.*
10. *Tēra mau pōti'i haviti.*

§41(a)

1. His knife. 2. Our (dl exc.) dog. 3. Your (pl.) boat. 4. His hands. 5. Your five handsome dogs. 6. The chief's dogs. 7. The mango branch. 8. The carpenters' work. 9. Terii's leg. 10. Peu's dogs. 11. These are their (pl.) boxes. 12. Those are your (dl) beds. 13. That is my book. 14. That is the chief's dog. 15. That is this woman's letter.

§41(b)

1. *Tā'u mau 'uri.* 2. *Tōna ūpo'o.* 3. *Tō rātou mau va'a.* 4. *Tā'u mau tipi 'e ōno.*
5. *Tō rātou mau 'ahu nehenehe.* 6. *Te ūpo'o 'ō te i'a.* 7. *Te 'ama'a 'ō te tumu vi.* 8. *Te 'ohipa ā te ta'ata.* 9. *Te ūpo'o 'ō Teri'i.*
10. *Te 'avae 'ō Peu.* 11. *Nā'u tēra rata.* 12. *Nāna*

tēra mau afata. 13. *Nā Teri'i teie puta.* 14. *Nā'u teie uāti.* 15. *Nā 'outou teie 'amura'amā'a.*

§48(a)

1. I ate. 2. He wants a box. 3. They (pl.) will cry. 4. You two are going to town. 5. He gave the present. 6. They (pl.) were drinking beer. 7. The man killed a pig. 8. The women were looking at the sea. 9. The man will eat the mango. 10. The boys are running. 11. The turtle was killed by the fishermen. 12. The man was bitten by the shark. 13. I shall hit the dog with a stick. 14. He was elected member of the Territorial Assembly. 15. The yams were cooked by me. 16. The flowers were planted by the girl. 17. The wood will be cut by you (pl.). 18. A coconut tree is being planted. 19. The rat was eaten by the dog. 20. The dog was hit by him.

§48(b)

1. *Te 'amu nei au 'i te hō'e vi.* 2. *Te 'aū ra 'oia 'inanahi.* 3. *'Ua 'ia hia tō'u tāūpo'o 'inanahi.* 4. *'Ua pa'imi hia te pōti'i 'e te tamaiti.*
5. *'E tāpū vau 'i te vahie 'ananahi.* 6. *'E 'āu tāua.* 7. *Te 'amu ra rātou 'i te mau vi.* 8. *'Ua hohonī te 'uri 'i tō'u 'avae.* 9. *'Ua pohe te tavana 'inanahi.* 10. *'Inanahi 'ua ho'o mai vau 'i te mau puta 'e maha.*
11. *'Ua hina'aro vau 'i tāna 'uri.* 12. *Te hi'o nei te pōti'i 'i te miti.* 13. *Te ta'oto nei te 'uri.* 14. *'Ua haere 'oia 'i te 'oire.* 15. *'Ua 'ia 'oe 'i tā'u puta.*

§55(a)

1. He grows mangoes. 2. They (pl.) broke the glasses. 3. I shall bring my things. 4. You spilled the milk. 5. He killed a pig. 6. They (pl.) stared at the girls. 7. They two will go to the market. 8. The men left. 9. The girls are chattering. 10. We two (exc.) slept.

§55(b)

1. *'E ha'aputu hia te mau ha'ari marō 'ato'a.* 2. *'E fa'anehenehe 'oia 'i te piha.* 3. *'E ha'apo'i hia 'oia.* 4. *'E fa'aoti vau 'i ta tāua parauparau ra.* 5. *'E fa'a'ati hia te 'upe'a.* 6. *'E fa'a'ite ātu vau 'iāna.* 7. *'Ua fa'atupu hia te hō'e tamā'ara'a.* 8. *'Ua fa'atae hia mai te mau pua'atoro 'i Tahiti.* 9. *'Ua hoehoe te mau ta'ata.* 10. *'Ua hi'ohi'o 'oia 'i te i'a.*

§62(a)

1. The girl was not sought by the boy. 2. His hat was not stolen yesterday. 3. Moana is not sleeping. 4. The ground is not wet. 5. I am not reading. 6. I shall not cut the wood. 7. You will not drink the wine. 8. He will not swim. 9. They (pl.) will not go to the market. 10. I am not eating.

§62(b)

1. 'E'ita vau 'e haere 'i te mātete. 2. 'Aita te tao'a 'i horo'a hia 'i te tavana. 3. 'Aita te mau ta'ata 'i tae mai. 4. 'Aore au 'e tāmā'a nei. 5. 'Aita 'outou 'i tāmā'a. 6. 'E'ita te 'uri 'e hohoni 'i te ta'ata. 7. 'E'ita 'o Peu 'e 'āu. 8. 'E'ore au 'e 'amu 'i te ūfi. 9. 'Aita te vahine 'i tanu 'i te tumu ha'ari. 10. 'E 'ere rātou 'i te tamari'i.

§71(a)

1. We two (exc.) left. 2. There are the Tuamotu Islands. 3. He will arrive in the district of Paea. 4. He will go to Mataiea. 5. He was received by the Queen. 6. A feast was organised. 7. I will explain to him about the work. 8. They (pl.) let down the nets. 9. They (pl.) go to the edge of the lagoon. 10. We two (exc.) think we will go to the islands.

§71(b)

1. 'E tāmā'a maita'i 'ōrua 'i teie mahāna. 2. 'E haere te mau ta'ata 'ato'a. 3. 'Ua haere rātou 'i te po'ipo'i. 4. 'E tāmā'a rātou. 5. Te vai ra te mau tiare 'i te mau motu 'ato'a. 6. 'E'ita taua tiare ra 'e tupu 'i te mau vāhi 'ato'a. 7. 'Ua ti'i 'outou 'i tēra tiare. 8. Te haere nei tātou 'i roto 'i te hō'e fare toa. 9. Te hina'aro nei vau 'i te hō'e piripou. 10. 'E rave vau.

§76(a)

1. The ground is wet. 2. This is my wife. 3. I have two pigs. 4. They (pl.) have a good dog. 5. That is his house. 6. The yams are not hard. 7. That man is very big. 8. That girl is beautiful. 9. It is not small. 10. We two (exc.) have no money.

§76(b)

1. 'E mea roa te purumu. 2. 'E 'ere 'i te mea roa. 3. 'E 'i'ita tō 'onei. 4. 'E tāmā'ara'a tō 'ananahi. 5. 'E pua'a tā te tavana. 6. 'Aita tō'u 'e fare. 7. 'E piti tōna rima. 8. 'E mea āu roa te 'anani. 9. 'Aita tā rātou 'e moni. 10. 'E 'ere 'i te mea puai 'oia.

§79(a)

1. The day before yesterday I went fishing. 2. I cried this morning. 3. This afternoon we (pl. inc.) shall go and buy some bread. 4. Tomorrow morning we (dl inc.) shall work. 5. Tonight I shall sleep at home. 6. Tomorrow I shall buy a car. 7. The girl often cries. 8. Terii is still eating. 9. Yesterday he gave a book. 10. I saw the girl the day before yesterday.

§79(b)

1. 'Ua 'ite vau 'ia 'oe 'inanahi ra. 2. 'I teie mahāna 'ua hohoni te 'uri 'i te tamāroa. 3. 'Inanahi 'ua 'ia hia tō'u tāūpo'o. 4. 'Ananahi 'e pāpa'i vau 'i te rata. 5. 'Ua fatata te taime 'e tae mai tātou 'i Tahiti. 6. 'Ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i 'e haere rātou 'e tai'a. 7. 'Ua hohoni te 'uri 'i tō'u 'avae 'inanahi ra. 8. 'I teie āhiāhi 'e haere tātou 'i te 'oire. 9. 'I teie pō 'e 'amu tātou 'i tā Peu pua'a. 10. 'Inanahi 'ua 'ite au 'i te mau tiare nehenehe.

§82(a)

1. The glass is on the table. 2. The wine bottle is under the table. 3. I shall go to town. 4. They (pl.) went to Terii's place. 5. He came. 6. I left. 7. Today I shall go to town. 8. They (pl.) will come at two o'clock. 9. He did that man's work. 10. Drink this water!

§82(b)

1. Tei roto te i'a 'i te miti. 2. 'Aita 'e i'a 'i roto 'i te miti. 3. Tei mua mai te 'uri 'i te fare. 4. Tei ni'a iho 'oia 'i te tumu rā'au. 5. Tei muri mai te ta'ata 'i te fare. 6. 'E pāpa'i mai 'oe 'ia'u 'i te rata. 7. 'I teie mahāna 'e reva ātu ai vau 'i Auteraria. 8. 'I te hora pae 'e tae mai ai rātou. 9. 'Ua haere mai te ta'ata. 10. 'E parau mai 'oe 'ia'u.

§86(a)

1. I shall go and get some food for my dog. 2. I shall buy a chair for my house. 3. I got a canoe for you. 4. You (pl.) will give the present to the girl. 5. He went to town with his dog. 6. He swims well. 7. He left quickly and went fishing. 8. He is a good swimmer. 9. That is my book. 10. I bought a pig for my parents.

§86(b)

1. 'E ho'o mai vau 'i te tāūpo'o nō 'oe. 2. 'Ua ho'o mai 'oia 'i te i'a nā tāna vahine. 3. 'Ua ho'o mai vau 'i te ma'a i'a nō te tāmā'ara'a. 4. 'Ua rave rātou 'i te puta nā'u. 5. Nā Teri'i taua puta ra. 6. 'Ua

haere vau 'i te 'oire e 'o Peu. 7. 'Ua 'āu 'oia e tāna 'uri. 8. 'Ua 'āu vitiviti 'oia. 9. Te 'āu vitiviti nei 'oia. 10. 'Ua hamani vau 'i teie va'a nō 'oe.

§89(a)

1. They (pl.) went to get the bread. 2. Terii went to cut the wood. 3. I went because I want the book. 4. He stayed home because it is raining. 5. I like it because it is a beautiful flower. 6. He went to take a walk. 7. He was still asleep because he was tired. 8. I work in order to live. 9. He built a boat so that he could go fishing. 10. He left at noon because he is eating at Mr Terii's house.

§89(b)

1. 'Ua haere 'oia nō te rave mai 'i te i'a. 2. 'Ua rave 'oia 'i te hamara nō te hamani 'i te fare. 3. 'Ua ho'o mai 'oia 'i te ūfi nō te horo'a ātu 'i tōna metua vahine. 4. 'Ua 'iria 'oia nō te mea 'ua 'amu vau 'i tāna i'a. 5. 'Ua 'oa'oa vau nō tōna taera'a mai. 6. 'Ua here vau 'iāna nō tōna haviti. 7. 'Ua parahi noa 'oia nō te mea 'ua rohirohi 'oia. 8. 'Ua marua te mau rau'ere rā'au nō te mea 'ua puai te mata'i. 9. 'Ua haere 'oia 'e hopu 'i te miti nō te ve'ave'a 'ō te mahāna. 10. 'E haere ātu 'oia 'i te 'oire nō te farerei 'i tōna hoa.

§91(a)

1. Chop the wood. 2. Look! 3. Do not cry. 4. May they (pl.) like the girl. 5. Do not swim here. 6. Sit down. 7. Stand up. 8. Do not take the knife. 9. Do not pick the hibiscus. 10. Come back at five o'clock.

§91(b)

1. A 'amu 'i taua mau ūfi ra. 2. 'Eiaha 'e ta'iri 'i te 'uri. 3. A horo'a mai na 'i tēra puta. 4. 'Ia 'oa'oa rātou. 5. 'Eiaha 'e horo vitiviti. 6. A haere a rave mai 'i te i'a 'i te mātete. 7. A 'ana mai 'i te ha'ari. 8. 'Eiaha 'ia mo'e hia 'ia 'oe 'i te rave mai 'i te titeti teata. 9. 'E haere tāua 'e ti'i 'i te poti 'i teie āhiāhi. 10. 'Ia ineine tātou nō te taera'a mai te tavana rahi.

§96(a)

1. Is that bird white? 2. Will he swim tomorrow? 3. Did he hit his dog? 4. Who is that woman? 5. Who hit my dog? 6. Who is crying in the room? 7. Who was put in prison? 8. Who was given the book by the chief? 9. Whom are you going to see? 10. Which fish did you (pl.) take?

§96(b)

1. 'E haere rātou 'i ō vai mā? 2. Tehia 'uri tāna 'e hina'aro? 3. Nā vai tēra uāti? 4. 'Ua rave hia 'e vai? 5. Nō vai tēra pere'o'o? 6. 'Ua horo'a rāua 'i te tao'a 'ia vai? 7. 'O vai tēra ta'ata? 8. 'O vai tei ta'iri 'i te 'uri? 9. 'O vai tā 'oe 'i 'ite 'i te 'oire? 10. Nā vai 'i rave 'i te farāoa?

§103(a)

1. Why are they (pl.) swimming? 2. Why did he hit the dog? 3. Why was the dog killed? 4. Where did he put the book? 5. Where is the woman going? 6. Where are you going now? 7. What are we (pl. inc.) doing tonight? 8. When did he give the book? 9. How did they (pl.) build the canoe? 10. What are you (pl.) eating?

§103(b)

1. Nō te aha rātou 'i rave ai? 2. Nō te aha 'oe 'i haere mai ai? 3. Tei hea te fare rata? 4. 'Ua haere 'oe 'i hea 'inanahi? 5. Inafea te vahine 'i ta'oto ai? 6. Mai hea mai 'oe? 7. 'O vai tō 'oe i'oa? 8. 'E mea nafea tā rātou taparahira'a 'i te ma'o? 9. 'E aha tā 'oe 'i horo'a ātu 'ia rātou? 10. Tei hea tō 'oe tāūpo'o?

§107(a)

1. It is you (pl.) who hit me yesterday. 2. I saw a man building the house. 3. I shall buy the dog that will be given to them. 4. That is the house that I like. 5. That is the dog that they (pl.) bought. 6. I know the carpenter who built that house. 7. I went to get the pig which will be killed for the wedding. 8. I know the man who is being sought by the police. 9. I have found the money that you lost. 10. I very much like the car that he bought.

§107(b)

1. 'O 'oe te hamani 'i te va'a. 2. 'Ua 'ite au 'i te ta'ata 'o tei ta'iri 'i tā 'oe 'uri. 3. Teie te pōti'i 'o tei tanu 'i te tiare. 4. Tēra te pōti'i tā tātou 'i 'ite. 5. Teie te rata tā te tavana 'i pāpa'i. 6. 'Ua reva ātu te ta'ata tei pāpa'i 'i teie puta. 7. 'Ua farerei vau 'i te pōti'i tei fa'aipoipo hia 'inanahi ra. 8. 'Ua 'ite au 'ia Moana 'i te tanura'a 'i te hō'e tumu ha'ari. 9. 'Ua haere vau 'e hi'o 'i tā'u vahine 'i te āura'a. 10. 'O rāua tei haere 'e rama mai 'i te 'oura-miti.

§118(a)

1. I do not know when they (pl.) came. 2. You (pl.) drank beer as you swam. 3. They (pl.) do not know why he cried. 4. I know why he was elected mayor. 5. That man said that you are a good man. 6. We (pl. inc.) do not know when he will return. 7. I do not know how he caught the pig. 8. He does not know whether they are coming. 9. I hope that you understand my letter. 10. I thought that you left.

§118(b)

1. 'Ua 'ite vau 'i te mahāna 'oia 'i reva ātu ai. 2. 'Ua ōri haere 'oia ma te 'amu 'i te hō'e 'anani. 3. 'Aita vau 'i 'ite nō te aha 'oia 'i ha'aparari ai 'i te hapaina. 4. 'Ua 'ite au 'i te mahāna 'oia 'i hamani ai 'i te fare. 5. 'Aita rātou 'i 'ite nō te aha 'oia 'i reva ātu ai. 6. 'Ua 'ite rātou 'e aha tā'u 'i rave 'inanahi ra. 7. 'Ua 'ite au ē 'ua pāpā'i mai 'oe 'ia'u. 8. 'Ua parau 'oia 'e ta'ata 'ino 'o 'oe. 9. 'Ua mana'o vau ē 'e mea puai 'oia. 10. 'Ua 'ite au 'e mea nafea tō te pōti 'i ha'apararira'a 'i te hi'o-ha'amaramarama.

§126(a)

1. We two (inc.) are looking at each other. 2. He sees himself in the water. 3. They (pl.) bought the bread. 4. He hit Peu's dog. 5. Tomorrow I shall try to go fishing. 6. Do you know how to prepare yams? 7. They (pl.) know how to build a house. 8. I can build a house. 9. Can you lift the stone? 10. I cannot lift the stone.

§126(b)

1. Te hi'ohi'o nei rātou rātou iho. 2. 'Inanahi ra 'ua horohorōi rāua rāua iho. 3. Nā tēra ta'ata 'i ta'iri 'i te 'uri 'ā Teri'i. 4. 'E tāmata 'oia 'i te hamani 'i te afata. 5. 'E nehenehe tā'u 'e rave 'i te 'ofa'i. 6. 'E'ita tāna 'e nehenehe 'e rave 'i te 'ofa'i. 7. 'Ua 'ite anei 'oe 'i te hamani 'i te fare? 8. 'E nehenehe anei tā 'outou 'e tanu 'i te ūfi? 9. E, 'e nehenehe roa tā mātou 'e tanu 'i te ūfi. 10. 'E'ita tā mātou 'e nehenehe 'e tanu 'i te ūfi.

§131(a)

1. I do not want you to break my glass. 2. The man wants you to help him. 3. They (pl.) want to build a house. 4. We (pl. inc.) do not want to swim. 5. I must go and get the money. 6. You must not hit that dog. 7. You must come and eat. 8. I want a ballpoint pen. 9. I had to go and get the money. 10. If the weather is fine tomorrow, we (dl inc.) shall go to the beach.

§131(b)

1. 'E reva ihoa vau 'i teie nei. 2. 'Aita vau 'e hina'aro 'i te haere 'i te 'oire. 3. 'E hina'aro 'oia 'i te hō'e 'anani. 4. 'E haere ihoa vau 'i te fare toa. 5. 'Eiaha 'oe 'e haere 'e āu 'i teie mahāna. 6. 'E haere ihoa te pōti 'i 'e ti 'i 'i te farāca. 7. 'E hina'aro rātou 'e ho'o mai 'i te poti. 8. Te hina'aro nei rāua 'ia hamani vau 'i te va'a. 9. 'Eiaha 'oe 'e ha'aparari 'i tēra hapaina. 10. Mai te peu ē 'e hohoni tēra 'uri 'i tā'u moa fa'a'amu, 'e taparahi pohe roa vau 'iāna.

KEY TO TRANSLATIONS

§92. Arrival in Tahiti

Now we are arriving at Faaa, the airport of Tahiti. At half past seven the plane of the UTA French airline arrives at Tahiti airport, Faaa. Then the passengers from the UTA plane go into the tourist reception area. I see many tourists from far away lands, from France, America, Europe, and also from New Zealand.

I see a man coming with his bags. He wishes to take a taxi to go to his hotel. The tourist asks the taxi-driver to take him to town, where his hotel is. He asks the taxi-driver:

"Tell me, can you take me and drive me to the hotel?"

"Yes, certainly. Let's go. Where are your bags?"

"Here. You can take them."

"I shall put them in the taxi and we will go to your hotel in Papeete."

§97. The Post Office

This morning a tourist goes to the post office to post his letters and his parcel to America. Now, he goes into the post office. He sees a beautiful post office girl. Then he asks the girl how to post his letters and his parcel.

"Good day, lovely girl. How are things this morning?"

"Very good. What brings you here?"

"I have come to post my two letters and my parcel to America."

"Don't panic; first I shall weigh your letters. Give me your letters. For these two letters it is thirty-two francs. Is your parcel to be sent too?"

"Yes, it is to be sent to America as well."

"Well, give it to me and I shall weigh it. Your parcel is two kilograms. It is 140 taras (700 CFP) to send this parcel by air-mail."

"Thank you, lovely girl. I am very pleased because in coming here I have seen what a beautiful girl you are."

§104. Conversation

"Where have you been today?"

"I went to the market to buy some fish. I arrived at the market and there were no fish. So I only got some red bananas, some sweet potatoes, and yams. How about you? Where have you been today?"

"I have been swimming because I had no work today. I thought I would go and swim a little. When are you going to Raiatea?"

"I think perhaps next week. That is when we will be going to Raiatea. The length of the stay will be perhaps two or three months. And you? Where are you going in the near future?"

"We think we will go to the Matuita Islands because we have some friends there who wrote saying that perhaps we would like to go and stay on Matuita for a few days. We can certainly go out to Matuita."

"Now I think the time has come for me to go swimming. So I shall have to end our conversation. I think, too, that your wife is waiting at home preparing food. May you enjoy your meal."

§108. Visit to the Shops

Here are a few explanatory words about going to the shops. Now we are going into a shop to purchase some items that we want.

I go into the shop and ask the shop-assistant: "I would like a good pair of trousers for myself."

I ask her to give me the blue trousers. So she gives them to me.

"How much are these trousers?"

"They are two hundred taras plus five hundred (1500 CFP). Which ones do you want?"

"I would like those blue ones. How much are they?"

"They are two hundred taras (1000 CFP)."

"Give me the blue ones."

She gives them to me and I take them. I pay the two hundred taras (1000 CFP).

"There is your money. Give me also that beautiful shirt down there that I can see. Could I have it, please?"

"Don't panic, I'll go and get it. Here is your shirt. Do you want it?"

"Yes, that's the one I want. Tell me how much it is."

"This is the price. One hundred taras plus thirty (650 CFP)."

"It is not dear. I'll take it. Wrap up the trousers and the shirt in a parcel. Yes, here is the money for the shirt and trousers.

"I must go; thank you very much for giving me the details about the prices of the shirt and the trousers in this shop."

§119. Copra

A few words about copra making. To make copra, all the dry coconuts are gathered together. When this has been done, the ripe or dry coconuts are cut in two. They are cut up with an axe. After that, the coconuts which have been cut in two are opened up and then one digs around them so as to remove the meat. When this is finished, the coconut meat, that is, the copra, is dried in the sun for a period of two or three weeks, if the weather is good. When the copra is quite dry, it is put into bags to send away, and sold.

§127. The Market

The Tahiti market is always full of produce. There is a great variety every day. This is how it is organised: the Papeete market is always open from Monday until Sunday, from four o'clock in the morning until seven o'clock in the evening. On Sundays it is open from four o'clock in the morning until ten o'clock.

There are many foodstuffs which come from the districts of Tahiti. They come also from the islands of Moorea, Huahine, Raiatea, Borabora. The days when there is most produce at the market are from Thursday until Sunday. From Monday until Wednesday there is not much produce which comes into the Papeete market. There is a large amount of produce and other local products on sale. There are very many kinds of fish; shell necklaces are also sold, and carvings, hats, and baskets.

There are many tourists who come to the Papeete market to look at the quantity of produce and the fish. Because of the great variety of products, the Papeete market has become the delight and joy of the tourists.

§132. Fishing

Today, the twentieth of February 1968, Terii wants me to explain to him fishing methods in Tahiti. I shall explain to him the method of fishing with nets at the edge of the reef. Many canoes go out to the edge of the reef. They let down their nets at the reef's edge so as to chase the fish into them. Then the nets are closed. Next, they dive into the water to collect the fish so as to put them into the canoes.

After that, they change fishing areas. They go to the edge of the lagoon and once more let down their nets. It is the accompanying canoes which go and chase the fish into the nets. After this, the fishermen dive into the sea to spear the fish, and then put them into the canoes.

§134. Pearl-shell Diving

The work of pearl-shell diving is done every year in the Tuamotus. The pearl-shell diving season lasts three or four months. We know that the Tuamotus are surrounded by reefs. In the middle of the land is the sea. It is there that pearl-shell is dived for.

In order to dive for pearl-shell, men go out into the deep water in outrigger canoes. When they arrive, they say a prayer before diving. There are two men in each canoe, one who dives and one who remains in the canoe to pull up the pearl-shell baskets which are filled by the diver. This diver descends on a rope to which a lead weight is attached, since it is this lead weight which brings him quickly to the bottom of the water. When he gets to the bottom, he takes his basket and fills it with pearl-shell. When it is full, in order to signal the ropeman in the canoe, he pulls three times on the rope. Then he comes up and the pearl-shell basket is pulled up as well.

When the diving is finished, the pearl-shell is sent to the pearl-shell merchants in Papeete. Then the divers receive their pay.

§135. Tahiti

Here are a few words about the French island departments of Polynesia, Tahiti, the main island, and the town of Papeete. Besides Tahiti, there are the Leeward Islands, the Tuamotus, Maareva, Matuita, the Windward Islands, Raiatea, Borabora, Huahine, and Maupiti. First we will talk about the area of Papeete, Tahiti.

In Papeete there are new houses being built, and roads being repaired. For this reason it can be said that in the future Papeete will become the delight of tourists, since there are very many tourists who come to Tahiti from America, from France, from Britain, and Europe, to admire the beauty of the island of Tahiti.

Here are the things that will be seen by tourists when they come to Tahiti. Before they arrive in the district of Paea, they will see the temple of Arahurahu. From there they go to Atimaono, the main place where sugar-cane is planted for the manufacture of sugar. Then they go on to Mataiea and Papeari. This is the main haunt of the painter Paul Gauguin. From there they go to Taravao. There, there is the biggest cattle-breeding establishment in Tahiti. Here there are New Zealand cattle which are imported to Tahiti to increase milk production. From there they come to Afaahiti. There, there is the Hotel Faratea, where very many tourists come to eat.

They return to Tahiti through the districts of Hitiaa, Faaone, Papenoo, and Haapape.

Before arriving in Papeete, they go to the promontory of Haapape, in other words to Point Venus. There they admire the lighthouse. Also at Point Venus is the statue of the British man, Captain Cook, who arrived in Tahiti in the year 1769 in Matavai Bay. He was received by Queen Pomare IV. After that, a feast was organised in honour of their arrival. We see then that the first people to arrive in Tahiti were British, from the city of London. These people also carried out missionary work in Tahiti.

§136. Things to do in Tahiti

"How are things in Tahiti these days?"

"Good. The rain has stopped a little. Things are very good these days."

"What can I do tomorrow?"

"If it does not rain, you can go and visit the districts. There you will observe the beauty of the countryside. You can also go to Moorea since there are many tourists who go there. You could also go to the Iles Sous le Vent, namely Huahine, Raiatea, Borabora, just as you wish."

"Excellent. Tomorrow you will pick me up and we will go and visit the districts. I do not think it will rain tomorrow. So you can come and pick me up tomorrow morning at half past seven."

"Yes, I shall come and pick you up tomorrow. We shall make a trip around the island."

"What other things are to be done in Tahiti?"

"In the evenings you can go and visit the nightclubs, the singing-spots like the Bar Lea, the Hotel Taaone, the Puoro Plage, the Hotel Tahiti, and still more. You can also go and watch the local dances, Tahitian dancing, the tamure, the paoa, the hivinau, the aparima, and more."

"Thank you very much for the information you have given me about this place. I think perhaps that my Tahitian holiday will be a real delight."

§137. Planting Sweet Potatoes

In order to plant sweet potatoes, the stalks of the sweet potatoes which have been growing for a long time are cut off. Holes are made in which to plant the sweet potato cuttings. These cuttings are placed in the holes which have been dug and where the earth has been piled up. When the sweet potato cuttings have been placed in

the holes, they are covered up. One should then water the newly planted sweet potato cuttings, if it does not rain or if the sun is very strong.

The season for planting yams is during the months of May, June, July. The time until one can eat the sweet potatoes, that is to say the time when they are mature, is about five or seven months. The sweet potatoes can then be eaten. When the vegetable is mature, it can be dug up from the ground.

§138. The Eel's Hole

Today I shall tell the story of the eel's hole. There was in the Iles Sous le Vent, notably on Tahaa, in the district of Poutoru, a huge eel which always ate people. All the people who paddled there in their canoes were eaten by that eel when they came to a certain spot. He was at a promontory which was given the name "the Eel's Hole", in other words "Eel's Hole Point". It was past this place that people came in from the districts by canoe. And most of them were eaten by the eel.

At that time there were also many fishermen. The champion of the land at that time was Taarii. His trade was spear-fishing. The people of the island saw that the eel always ate people who travelled by canoe. One day they thought they would go and spear the eel in order to prevent him from ever again eating the people who paddled their canoes to the town.

One day Taarii came armed with his spear. He saw the eel outside his hole. He thought he would spear the eel so that the people who travelled by canoe might live, so that they would never more be eaten by that eel. At this time he speared the eel. From that time on, the name given to that promontory is "Eel's Hole Point".

§139. The Fourteenth of July

The description of the fourteenth of July.

The fourteenth of July has become the National Day of the French Republic. For this reason the festival of the fourteenth of July is always held in Tahiti also. To celebrate the fourteenth of July in Tahiti, amusement and side-show stalls are built everywhere in the town, festooned with all kinds of tropical flowers.

On the thirteenth of July, the day on which the festivities commence, the stalls open from midday until two o'clock in the morning. The next morning, in other words the fourteenth, the main day of the festival, at eight o'clock in the morning there is a march-past by the armed forces and many other groups. At eight o'clock in the

morning of the fourteenth of July everyone assembles in the march-past area, in Bruat Avenue. When the Governor of the Territory arrives at his reviewing stand, the motor cycles of the gendarmerie swing past. Following them are the different platoons of soldiers from the army, navy, and air force. Next come groups of singers, dancers, athletes, footballers, basketballers, and many others. Groups from all religious sects also march past, Protestants, Catholics, Mormons, the Sanito and the Bethany Churches. The pupils from all the schools also march past.

When the procession has finished, the Governor receives the officials of the Territory for a toast. At this time the amusement stalls and side-shows open right through until six o'clock in the morning. That same evening there is a grand ball presided over by the Governor of the Territory.

The July festival lasts for two weeks. There are many things happening during those two weeks: native dances, singing, canoe, cycle, and horse races. All this takes place during these two weeks. After that, the last day of the second week marks the closing of the great July festival, the time of celebration for the French Republic.

§140. Orange-picking

When the time comes to harvest the oranges of the valley of Punaaruu, in the district of Punaauia, all the men who are used to picking oranges in that valley go in. They leave early in the morning with their bags, their clothing, and their night apparel, because when people go to gather oranges in the valley, they sleep at the bottom end of the valley. It is the next morning that they pick the oranges. The season for the orange harvest at Punaaruu is during the months of May, June, July, August.

The pickers go into the valley on foot early in the morning. In the afternoon they arrive at the resting place. At that time they eat a little and sleep, and in the morning they continue to a spot still further away. That is where the Punaaruu orange plantation is.

When the orange season arrives, there are very many oranges on the trees. The trees are just a mass of yellow. When the people get to the spot, they climb up to pick the oranges and to fill their bags. There are many people who go, as it is a pleasure for them to go into the Punaaruu valley because of its beauty and real scenic splendour.

When their orange harvest is finished, they descend, bearing the oranges that they have gathered. It is a long way to go, and they rest many times. Then they continue until they reach level ground, the district of Punaauia.

§141. The Apetahi Flower

There exist many flowers, but on the island of Raiatea there is a flower which does not grow everywhere; this is the apetahi flower. This flower is found only on Raiatea.

The place where the flower is found is on Temehani mountain. There are many people who go there from time to time to pick this flower, because its bloom is not like that of other flowers. When its petals open in the morning it makes a noise. When it opens, it opens like a human hand. It is a very beautiful flower, white on top and green underneath.

In order to go and pick this flower, people leave early in the morning so as to arrive in the evening at the place where the flowers may be gathered. There they sleep. When it is dawn, they approach the flowers in order to hear the noise, because when their petals open, they make a noise. This flower is extremely rare. It is not like the other flowers which people are accustomed to see.

§142. House-building

This is how a Tahitian house, a house made of coconut leaves, is built. To build a Polynesian house, coconut leaves are cut off and the trunks cut up. The trunks are taken to make the house-posts. The coconut leaves are taken to cover the house. Bamboo is also cut and woven to make the walls, the door, and the windows.

To make the posts, trunks of coconut trees are got. Coconut leaves are woven to cover the house. When this is finished, the house is covered with them. Straight beams are also cut, from the purau tree and others, to make the rafters of the house. When the posts have been sunk, the rafters are attached. When this is finished, the house is thatched. Next, the floor of the house is made. The short posts are installed inside, and the floor is laid, lashed in place with woven bamboo. The bamboo walls are put in, as are the windows and doors. A Polynesian-style house is now completed.

§143. Fishing with Stones

Fishing with stones on Borabora. On Borabora this type of fishing is done when there are a lot of tourists. At these times a reception is organised for the tourists by the population of Borabora, consisting of songs, dances, and Tahitian feasts. When this is finished, the tourists go and tour the island of Borabora. Then they go and watch the way fishing with stones is done.

This is how this type of fishing is organised: the whole population, men and women, are adorned with crowns of flowers on their heads

and around their necks and wear many different kinds of sarongs. They go into the water to make a stone enclosure. When this is finished, everyone, men, women, and children go out to the deep water throwing stones into it so as to chase the fish into the enclosure. Then the fish all race into the enclosure, which is right at the shore.

The tourists go in to look at the fish in the enclosure, taking photos and filming this fishing activity. All the tourists can go into the fish enclosure and take the fish of their choice. Tourists are most enthusiastic about this type of fishing, and it is for this reason that many tourists come specially to Borabora to watch it.

§144. The Breadfruit Legend

Once upon a time there was a mother whose husband was dead and who had many children. At that time, that is to say, at the time of the death of her husband, she always remained alone with her children. So in order to feed them she would go and tend the gardens and plant vegetables. Previously it was her husband who went to tend the gardens and collect the food to feed them. Then the woman's husband died. It was now she who collected the food.

At that time the country was in a state of famine. The woman and her children were in great difficulties because they had no food. One day she went down to the sea-shore and wept for her husband.

At that time a man approached. He said to her, "Why are you weeping?"

The woman replied: "I am weeping because we no longer have any food."

Then the man said: "Do not cry, because you will have food." Then he said to her: "Weep no more, because tomorrow morning when you wake up, you will see a breadfruit tree in front of your house. That tree will be my body transformed into a breadfruit tree, so that you and your children may live."

The next morning when the woman woke up, the breadfruit tree had grown and it was already bearing fruit. It was laden with fruit. The woman was very happy because fortunately, because of this man, they could eat, since he had transformed his body into a breadfruit tree. From this comes the legend of the breadfruit tree.

§145. The Lepers' Feast Day

A few words about the lepers of Orofara, Tahiti. Each year in Tahiti there is a celebration for the lepers of Tahiti, of Orofara. That day is called lepers' day. Before this great celebration takes place, many presents are sent to the centre of Orofara, the place

where the lepers live. Much food and many parcels are given to them, even toys for the children and also gifts of money.

When this feast day arrives, the Governor attends so as to pay honour to the feast of the lepers. The celebration is opened in the morning by a fanfare from the armed services. When this is over, the Governor speaks, to which the Director of Orofara replies. The Governor speaks again in reply to the Director of Orofara. When this is finished, there are songs by the people of Orofara. Next, all the religious groups and groups of singers come in to pay honour to the feast of the lepers until the evening.

On this day there are many songs sung by the lepers of Orofara themselves; there are also orchestras from the town of Papeete, groups of singers and dancers, namely the Heiva group, the Maeva Tahiti, Tahiti Nui, and Paulina groups who come and pay honour to this celebration. The different religious groups also sing. The Director of Orofara speaks again to end the celebration, and is thanked by the Governor. Then songs of farewell are sung by the Orofara group itself, and the celebration is over. At this time all the people return to the town of Papeete. This is how the lepers' feast day is organised in Tahiti.

THE TAHITIAN FAMILY

146. Kinship Terms

The most commonly used kinship terms are as follows:*

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| <i>te fēti'i</i> | the family |
| <i>na metua</i> | the parents |
| <i>te metua tāne</i> | the father |
| <i>te metua vahine</i> | the mother |
| <i>te tamaiti</i> | |
| <i>te tamāroa</i> | the son, boy, child |
| <i>te tamaiti pa'ari†</i> | |
| <i>te tamāroa pa'ari</i> | the son, boy (older than ten years) |
| <i>te tamāhine</i> | the daughter |
| <i>te tamāhine pa'ari</i> | the daughter, girl (older than ten years) |
| <i>te taure'are'a tāne</i> | the youth (older than twenty) |
| <i>te taure'are'a vahine</i> | the girl (older than twenty) |
| <i>te pōti'i</i> | the girl (about twenty) |
| <i>te teina</i> | the younger brother or sister |
| <i>te taea'e</i> | |
| <i>te tua'ana</i> | the elder brother, brother |
| <i>te taea'e matahiapo</i> | the eldest brother |
| <i>te tuahine</i> | the elder sister, sister |
| <i>te tuahine matahiapo</i> | the eldest sister |
| <i>te tamaiti fa'a'amu</i> | the adopted son |
| <i>te tamāhine fa'a'amu</i> | the adopted daughter |
| <i>te papa ru'au</i> | the grandfather |
| <i>te mamā ru'au</i> | the grandmother |
| <i>te mo'otua tāne</i> | the grandson |
| <i>te mo'otua vahine</i> | the grand-daughter |
| <i>te hina</i> | the great-grandchild |
| <i>te maeha'a</i> | the twins |
| <i>te metua fēti'i</i> | the uncle, aunt |
| <i>te huno'a tāne</i> | the son-in-law |

* A more complex terminology also exists, but this is used only in land titles or genealogies.

† *Pa'ari* is used only when there is reason to be very specific about age.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>te huno'a vahine</i> | the daughter-in-law |
| <i>te metua ho'ovai tāne</i> | the father-in-law |
| <i>te metua ho'ovai vahine</i> | the mother-in-law |
| <i>te tao'ete tāne</i> | the brother-in-law |
| <i>te tao'ete vahine</i> | the sister-in-law |

TAHITIAN—ENGLISH GLOSSARY

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>ā</i> again, once more | <i>'amura'amā'a</i> table |
| <i>a'ahiāta</i> dawn, early morning | <i>'ana</i> to grate |
| <i>'a'ahu</i> 'o'omo shirt | <i>'ana'ana</i> shining, to shine |
| <i>'a'amu</i> legend | <i>'ana'anatae</i> eager, enthusiastic |
| <i>ā'au</i> reef, reef enclosure | <i>āna'e</i> also, as well, only |
| <i>ā'e</i> used to convey the comparative | <i>'ananahi</i> tomorrow |
| <i>ā'e nei</i> already | <i>'ananahi ātu</i> day after tomorrow |
| <i>ā'e ra</i> then | <i>'ananahi 'ia pō</i> tomorrow night |
| <i>āfa</i> half | <i>'ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i</i> tomorrow morning |
| <i>'afa'i</i> to transport | <i>'anani</i> orange |
| <i>'afaro</i> straight | <i>a napō</i> tomorrow night |
| <i>afata</i> box | <i>anavai</i> river |
| <i>afata tauiha'a</i> parcel, baggage | <i>anei</i> interrogative marker |
| <i>afea?</i> when? | <i>āni</i> to ask |
| <i>āhiāhi</i> afternoon, evening | <i>āo</i> world, day |
| <i>ahiri</i> if, well, then | <i>ā'o</i> to warn, chastise, preach |
| <i>āho</i> to breathe | <i>'a'o</i> fat of fish |
| <i>'aho</i> rafter | <i>'aore</i> no, not |
| <i>'ahu</i> clothes, dress, shirt | <i>'aore ra</i> or |
| <i>ai</i> particle indicating movement | <i>a pae</i> fifth |
| <i>'ai</i> to eat (of animals) | <i>apara</i> apple |
| <i>'aita</i> no, not | <i>aparima</i> kind of dance |
| <i>'aita re'a</i> few | <i>apetahi</i> kind of flower |
| <i>'aita roa ātu</i> never | <i>'api</i> page |
| <i>'aiteā</i> not yet | <i>'api</i> new |
| <i>'aito</i> champion | <i>'api-parau</i> writing-paper |
| <i>'aiū</i> baby | <i>a piti</i> second |
| <i>'ama'a</i> branch | <i>'apo'o</i> hole |
| <i>'ama'a rā'au</i> branch, stick | <i>Apo'ora'a Rahi</i> Territorial Assembly |
| <i>a maha</i> fourth | <i>āra</i> to wake up, beware |
| <i>āmo</i> to carry on the shoulder | <i>'arapo'a</i> neck, throat |
| <i>'amu</i> to eat | <i>'ara'uā'e</i> soon |
| <i>'amui</i> bundle of goods, tied | |

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>ārea</i> period | <i>'avae</i> leg |
| <i>āre'a ra</i> however | <i>'ava'e</i> month, moon |
| <i>'arearea</i> amusement | <i>āvatea</i> afternoon |
| <i>'are miti</i> wave | |
| <i>ari'i</i> king, royal family | <i>'e</i> it is, demonstrative particle |
| <i>ari'i vahine</i> queen | <i>ē</i> different |
| <i>āroā</i> street, avenue | <i>'e aha?</i> what? why? |
| <i>āroha</i> to greet | <i>'e aha te huru?</i> how are things? |
| <i>'ata</i> to laugh, stem | <i>'e aha te tumu?</i> for what reason? |
| <i>āta</i> cloud | <i>'e'ere</i> not |
| <i>'atā</i> difficult, bunch | <i>'ehia?</i> how much? |
| <i>'a tae roa ātu</i> until, as far as | <i>'ehia moni?</i> how much? |
| <i>a tahi</i> first | <i>'ei</i> in, at, as |
| <i>atari</i> bunch of fruit | <i>'eīā</i> thief |
| <i>ātea</i> distant, far away | <i>'eiaha</i> negative imperative |
| <i>Atete</i> August | <i>'eiaha 'e rū!</i> there's no hurry! |
| <i>'ati</i> disaster, misfortune | <i>'e'ita</i> no, not (future) |
| <i>atira</i> enough | <i>ēna</i> already |
| <i>āto</i> to thatch | <i>'e'ore</i> no, not (future) |
| <i>'ato'a</i> also | <i>'e paha</i> perhaps |
| <i>Atopa</i> October | <i>Eperera</i> April |
| <i>a toru</i> third | <i>'e raverahi</i> many, numerous |
| <i>ātu</i> indicates movement away from the speaker | <i>'ere'ere</i> black, brown |
| <i>atua</i> God | <i>'e riro paha</i> perhaps |
| <i>ātura</i> then | <i>'e tae ātu</i> until, as far as |
| <i>'atu'atu</i> to arrange, to place, neat | <i>'ete</i> basket |
| <i>au</i> I, me | <i>'e te vai ātura</i> etcetera |
| <i>'au</i> to chew | <i>'e vai?</i> by whom? |
| <i>āu</i> to swim | |
| <i>āu</i> nice, good, to like | <i>fa'a</i> valley |
| <i>ā'u</i> to hunt | <i>fa'a-</i> causative prefix |
| <i>'aua</i> fence, enclosure | <i>fa'a'afaro</i> to straighten |
| <i>auā'e</i> fortunately | <i>fa'a'ahu</i> to clothe |
| <i>āuahi</i> fire | <i>fa'a'amu</i> to adopt a child, to feed |
| <i>āuā'u</i> to hunt, pursue | <i>fa'a'amura'a</i> breeding |
| <i>'aufau</i> to pay | <i>fa'a'apu</i> farmer, plantation, to cultivate |
| <i>'auri</i> iron, spear | <i>fa'a'ati</i> to surround, tour, close (a net) |
| <i>'aute</i> hibiscus | <i>fa'aea</i> to stop, stay, reserve |
| <i>Auteraria</i> Australia | <i>fa'a'eta'eta tino</i> athlete |
| <i>āva</i> passage (between reefs) | <i>fa'afa'aea</i> to stay, stop, remain, cease |
| <i>'ava'ava</i> cigarette, sour, salty | |

- fa'afa'aeara'a* holiday, stay
fa'afaito to weigh, make equal
fa'afarerei to introduce
fa'afariu to convert
fa'afatata to bring near
fa'aha'amā to shame
fa'ahanahana to celebrate
fa'ahapa to punish
fa'ahoro to drive, convey
fa'ahorora'a race
fa'ahou again, once more
fa'a'i to fill
fa'a'ino to do evil
fa'aipoipo to marry
fa'a'ite to explain, tell
fa'a'itera'a information
fa'amahu to be patient
fa'amata'u to terrify
fa'anaho to organise, place
fa'anehenehe to beautify, clean
fa'aoti to end, conclude, finish
fa'arapu to stir, mix
fa'arava'i to increase
fa'ari'i to receive, to accept, recipient
fa'ariro to accept, to become
fa'aro'o to listen to, to hear, to believe, religion
fa'atae to import
fa'ata'i to cause weeping
fa'ata'ira'a pū fanfare
fa'ātea! go away!
fa'ati'a to agree, sink a pcst
fa'atito to pollenate
fa'atupu to organise
fa'ehau soldier
faito to weigh
fanau to be born, give birth
fanau'a young of animals
Faire Friday
farāne franc
Farāni France, French
farāoa bread
fare house
fare 'auri prison
fare inura'a bar, bistro
fare iti toilet, W.C.
fare ha'api'ira'a school
fare hau town hall
fare ma'i hospital
fare moni bank
fare purera'a church
fare rata post office
fārerei to meet, see, visit
fare tāmā'ara'a restaurant
fare toa shop
fatata soon
fati to be broken
faufa'a gain, profit, worth
fefe twisted
fēfē a boil
fē'i red banana
feiā group of people
feiā-porote members of a procession
feiā-rave-pārau pearl-shell merchants
feiā-tāi'a fishermen
fenua ground, country, land
Fepuare February
feruri to think, reflect
fēti'i family
feti'a star
fifi to be in difficulties
fiu to be weary, bored
ha'a- prefix used with causative verb, indicating "to cause to be done", "to have something done"
ha'afaufau to debase
ha'afefe to bend
ha'afifi to entangle
ha'afirifiri to curl
ha'afiu to bore
ha'amaheu to discover

- ha'amaita'i* to do good
ha'amana to authorise
ha'amani'i to spill
ha'amānina to make level
ha'amaoro to delay
ha'amaramarama to enlighten, to explain, window
ha'amarari to disperse
ha'amata to state, commence
ha'amatarā to untie
ha'amau to establish
ha'amāu'a to waste
ha'ama'ue to make fly
ha'amauui to inflict pain
ha'amaurūru to thank, please
ha'amenemene to make round
ha'ami'omi'o to crumple
ha'amo'e to forget, lose
ha'apa'apa'a to roast
ha'apapū to level, assure
ha'aparari to break, smash
ha'apau to consume
ha'ape'ape'a to annoy
ha'ape'epe'e to hasten
ha'api'i to learn
ha'apiha'a to cause to boil
ha'apiha'e to vomit
ha'apohe to kill
ha'apo'i to cover up
ha'apoto to shorten
ha'apoupou to applaud
ha'apuai to exert strength
ha'apu'e to gather together
ha'apupu to class, classify
ha'apurara to scatter
ha'aputa to pierce
ha'aputu to heap up, gather up
ha'ari coconut
ha'avare to tell lies
ha'avī to punish
haere to move, go
haere ātu to go
haere mai to come
haerera'a visit
hahaere to go (dl)
hahu to shave, razor
hamani to build, make
hamara hammer
hapaina glass
hape mistake, to be wrong
hapono to send, post
hapū pregnant
haru to seize
hau government
haumi wet, damp
ha'une to weave
ha'uti to play, toy, game
hava'i to put, deposit, send
haviti beautiful
havitiviti beautiful (pl.)
hei garland, crown
hei-pūpū shell necklace
hemo to be surpassed, to pass
hepetoma week
here to love, sweetheart
hia passive marker
hi'a to slip, fall
himene song, to sing
hina great-grandchild
hina'aro to want, like
hio to whistle
hi'o to observe, see, look at, glass, mirror
hi'ohi'o to stare at
hitimahuta to be startled, to start
hitu seven
hivināu kind of dance
hoa friend
hoe to paddle, row
hō'e one, a, an
hō'e 'ahuru ten
hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu seventeen
hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e eleven
hō'e 'ahuru ma iva nineteen
hō'e 'ahuru ma maha fourteen
hō'e 'ahuru ma ōno sixteen

| | | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma pae</i> | fifteen | <i>'i</i> | full, to fill |
| <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma piti</i> | twelve | <i>'i'a</i> | fish |
| <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma toru</i> | thirteen | <i>'ia</i> | to steal |
| <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma va'u</i> | eighteen | <i>'ia ora na</i> | hello, greetings, good- |
| <i>hō'e hanere</i> | one hundred | | bye |
| <i>hō'e hanere ma hō'e</i> | one hundred | <i>'ia vai?</i> | to whom? |
| | and one | <i>ihora</i> | then |
| <i>hō'e tauatini</i> | one thousand | <i>'i hea?</i> | where? |
| <i>hoehoe</i> | to row here and there | <i>ihoa</i> | exactly, in fact |
| <i>hoera'a-va'a</i> | canoe race | <i>ihu</i> | nose |
| <i>hoho'a</i> | photograph, image, like- | <i>'i'ita</i> | pawpaw |
| | ness | <i>'i'ita 'otane</i> | male pawpaw |
| <i>hohoni</i> | to bite | <i>'i'ita 'ovahine</i> | female pawpaw |
| <i>hohoro</i> | to run (dl) | <i>'imi</i> | to gather, collect, look |
| <i>ho'i</i> | to return, in fact | | for |
| <i>honu</i> | turtle | <i>'i mua mai</i> | in front of |
| <i>ho'o</i> | to sell | <i>'i muri iho</i> | after that, next |
| <i>ho'o-haere</i> | to shop | <i>'i muri mai</i> | behind |
| <i>ho'o mai</i> | to buy | <i>'i muta'a ihora</i> | at that time, |
| <i>hope'a</i> | last, last born | | formerly |
| <i>hopoi</i> | to send, carry | <i>'i muta'a iho</i> | formerly |
| <i>hopu</i> | to dive, bathe | <i>'ina'i</i> | meat |
| <i>hora</i> | time, hour | <i>'inanahi</i> | yesterday |
| <i>horo</i> | to run | <i>'inanahi ātura</i> | the day before |
| <i>horo patete</i> | passenger | | yesterday |
| <i>horo'a</i> | to give | <i>'i napō</i> | last night |
| <i>horōi</i> | to wash | <i>ineine</i> | to prepare |
| <i>horohorōi</i> | to wash repeatedly | <i>'i ni'a</i> | on |
| <i>hotera</i> | hotel | <i>'ino</i> | bad |
| <i>hotu</i> | to produce, to bear fruit | <i>inu</i> | to drink |
| <i>hou</i> | before | <i>inuinura'a</i> | drink, toast |
| <i>hu'a</i> | small | <i>i'oa</i> | name |
| <i>huero</i> | egg | <i>'iore</i> | rat |
| <i>hui</i> | used respectfully of a group | <i>'i ō vai?</i> | at whose place? |
| | of esteemed people | <i>'i piha'i iho</i> | beside |
| <i>hui mana</i> | officials | <i>'i raro</i> | at the bottom, down |
| <i>hui ra'atira</i> | people | <i>'i rapae</i> | outside |
| <i>huru</i> | subject, manner, way, | <i>'iri</i> | skin |
| | method | <i>'iria</i> | to be angry, angry |
| <i>huru ātea ātu</i> | further away | <i>'iriti</i> | to translate |
| <i>huruhuru</i> | body hair | <i>'i ropu</i> | in the middle |
| <i>hururau</i> | different, diverse | <i>'i roto</i> | into, in, inside |
| <i>huti</i> | to pull up, pull | <i>'i rotopu</i> | among |

| | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>'ite</i> | to see, to know, to find, to | <i>ma'i hia</i> | to be sick |
| | understand, wise | <i>mai'a</i> | banana |
| <i>'i tai</i> | towards the sea | <i>maia'a</i> | mother of an animal |
| <i>'i teie āhiāhi</i> | this afternoon | <i>maira</i> | then, there |
| <i>'i teie nei</i> | now | <i>ma'iri</i> | past (time) |
| <i>'i teie nei mahāna</i> | today | <i>maita'i</i> | good, well |
| <i>'i teie pō</i> | this evening | <i>mā'iti</i> | to elect |
| <i>'i teie po'ipo'i</i> | this morning | <i>māmā</i> | light, inexpensive |
| <i>'i teie ru'i</i> | tonight | <i>mamā</i> | mother |
| <i>'i teie taimē</i> | now | <i>mamā ru'au</i> | grandmother |
| <i>iti</i> | small, few | <i>mamoe</i> | sheep |
| <i>itōito</i> | courage | <i>māmu!</i> | be quiet! |
| <i>'i uta</i> | at the bottom, towards the | <i>mana</i> | authorities |
| | land | <i>mana'o</i> | to think, hope |
| <i>iva</i> | nine | <i>manava!</i> | welcome! |
| | | <i>maniania</i> | to make a noise, to |
| | | | annoy |
| <i>mā</i> | family group | <i>manihini</i> | guest |
| <i>mā'a</i> | food, white of the coconut, | <i>manu</i> | bird |
| | fruit | <i>manuia</i> | cheers! good luck! to |
| <i>ma'a</i> | small quantity when ap- | | succeed |
| | plied especially to food, sling | <i>manureva</i> | aeroplane |
| <i>mā'ahia</i> | to become fruitful | <i>ma'o</i> | shark |
| <i>mā'e</i> | to lift | <i>ma'ohi</i> | Polynesian |
| <i>maeha'a</i> | twin | <i>maoro</i> | for a long time, to be |
| <i>maere</i> | to be astonished, ex- | | late |
| | ceptional | <i>maorora'a</i> | period, time, length |
| <i>maeva!</i> | welcome! | <i>mara'a</i> | to be raised, to rise |
| <i>maha</i> | four | <i>marae</i> | temple, ceremonial place |
| <i>maha 'ahuru</i> | forty | <i>maramarama</i> | intelligence |
| <i>mahāna</i> | sun, day | <i>mārehurehu</i> | dusk |
| <i>mahanahana</i> | warm | <i>Marite</i> | America |
| <i>mahāna hope'a</i> | the last day | <i>maro</i> | belt (royal) |
| <i>Mahāna Mā'a</i> | Saturday | <i>marō</i> | dry |
| <i>Mahāna Maha</i> | Thursday | <i>māro</i> | to be stubborn |
| <i>Mahāna Piti</i> | Tuesday | <i>marū</i> | calm, gentle, soft |
| <i>Mahāna Toru</i> | Wednesday | <i>marua</i> | to fall (leaves) |
| <i>mahora</i> | to spread open | <i>mata</i> | face, eyes |
| <i>mahuta</i> | fly, take off | <i>matahiapo</i> | first-born |
| <i>mai</i> | like, as, towards the | <i>matahiti</i> | year |
| | speaker, with, since, from | <i>mata'i</i> | wind |
| <i>mai te mea ē</i> | if, whether | <i>māta'ita'i</i> | to look at, admire |
| <i>mai te peu ē</i> | if | <i>matamua</i> | first |

- matarā* to become untied, open, to start
mata'u to fear
mātau to be accustomed, used to, know
matau hook
mata'eina'a district
matete market
Māti March
mati match
mataro sailor
matie green, grass
mātou we (pl. exc.)
mau plural marker, true, real, to hold
māua we (dl exc.)
maū'a to be wasted
ma'ue to fly
mauiui pain, to ache, to be sad
maurūru to thank, thank you
Mē May
mea thing
mero member
metua parents
metua tāne father
metua vahine mother
mihi to weep, to lament, grief
mimi cat, to urinate
miniti minute
miti sea
miti popa'a salt
mo'a Saint
moa fowl
moa ōni rooster
moa ufa hen
moana sea, ocean
mo'e to lose, to be forgotten, to forget
moemoea dream
mōhina bottle
momoni Mormon
monamona sweet
moni money
- moni-ho'o* price
moni-hu'ahu'a change
Monire Monday
Mo'orea Moorea
mo'otua grandchild
mōri light
mōto motor cycle
moto to fight, brawl
motu island
motu raro mata'i Iles Sous le Vent
mou'a mountain
mōri-turama-āva lighthouse
muto'i police
mutu to be cut
- na* the (dl marker), near the addressee
nā benefactive (for), by
nafea? how?
nā mua ā'e before
nana flock, herd
nā ni'a in, by
naonao mosquito
nā raro noa on foot
nā ropu between
nā roto by means of
nā vai serves the same purpose as 'o vai but is used only with transitive verbs
nava'i to be sufficient
nehenehe beautiful, to be able
nei near the speaker
ni'au coconut tree leaves
nihō tooth
ninamu blue
Niu Terani New Zealand
nō for, of
noa only, always, still
noa'a to be obtained
noa ātu ā although
noa iho only
no'ano'a fragrant, perfumed

- noho* to live, inhabit, sit
nō mātou, nā mātou for us (exc.)
nō māua, nā māua for us two (exc.)
nōna, nāna for him, her
nō 'oe, nā 'oe for you
nō 'ōrua, nā 'ōrua for you two
nō 'outou, nā 'outou for you
nō rātou, nā rātou for them
nō rāua, nā rāua for them two
nō tātou, nā tātou for us (inc.)
nō tāua, nā tāua for us two (inc.)
nō te aha? why?
nō te mea because
nō'u, nā'u for me
nō vai, nā vai whose
Novema November
nui big, immense
nu'u army
- 'o it is (demonstrative), to dig
'oa'oa pleasure, pleasant, to be happy
'oe you
ōe bell
'o'e sword
ō'e to be in a state of famine
'ofa'i stone, coral
'ofati to break
'ofe bamboo
'ohie easy
'ohipa work, thing
oi almost
ōi to mix
'oi sharp, pointed
'o'i to sprain
'oia he, she, it, yes
'oia ho'i namely
'oi'oi quickly
'oire town
'omaha to urinate
'ona he, she, it
one sand
- 'onei here
ōni indicates male sex in animals
ōno six
ōno 'ahuru sixty
'o'o'a bay
'o'omo to wear, to dress, to put into
'opa'a ripe coconut
'opahi axe
'opani door, to close, finish
ōpe shovel
'opū stomach, heritage
ora to live
'ore without, not, to neglect to
ōri to walk
'ori dance
'orira'a hanahana grand ball
'oro'a feast, festival
'orometua missionary
'ōrua you (dl)
ota raw, uncooked
'otāne indicates male sex in trees or plants
'ote'a kind of dance
oti to finish
'otu'e promontory, point
'oura-miti crayfish
'outou you (pl.)
'ovahine indicates female sex in trees or plants
'o vai? who? which?
'oviri wild, untamed
- pa'ari* to be hard, mature, stinging
pae five
pa'e male animals mature enough to reproduce or which have already reproduced
pae ā'au edge of the reef
pae 'ahuru fifty
pae miti beach
pae moana edge of the lagoon

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>pae tahatai</i> sea-shore, beach | <i>pe'ape'a</i> trouble, nuisance, to be sorry |
| <i>pafa'i</i> to gather, pick, pluck | <i>pe'etā</i> a bunch still attached to a branch |
| <i>pafa'ira'a</i> harvest | <i>pēni-pāpa'i</i> ballpoint pen, pen |
| <i>pāha</i> wild boar | <i>pēpa</i> pepper |
| <i>paha</i> perhaps | <i>pepe</i> butterfly, baby |
| <i>pāhere</i> comb | <i>pēpē</i> to wound |
| <i>pahī</i> steamer | <i>pere'o'o</i> taxi, car |
| <i>pahono</i> to answer | <i>pere'o'o uira</i> car |
| <i>pa'imi</i> to look for | <i>peretiteni</i> Presidency |
| <i>painu</i> to float in the sea | <i>petania</i> Bethany Church |
| <i>pana</i> to dig around, scoop | <i>pe'ue</i> mat |
| <i>pa'o'a</i> kind of dance | <i>pi</i> unripe |
| <i>papa'a</i> crab | <i>pia</i> beer |
| <i>pāpa'i</i> to write | <i>piha</i> room |
| <i>papa ru'au</i> grandfather | <i>piha'i iho</i> beside |
| <i>pape</i> water | <i>piharahara</i> to open up |
| <i>papū</i> flat, firmly, to be sure | <i>pi'i</i> to call |
| <i>papu'a</i> to wash | <i>pi'ifare</i> cat |
| <i>para</i> ripe | <i>pinepine</i> often |
| <i>parahi</i> to sit, goodbye | <i>pinia</i> indicates the young of sheep (lambs) |
| <i>parahira'a</i> chair | <i>pipi</i> to water |
| <i>paraparau</i> to converse | <i>piripou</i> trousers |
| <i>parara'a</i> the ripening | <i>piti</i> two |
| <i>parari</i> to break, smash | <i>piti 'ahuru</i> twenty |
| <i>pārataito</i> paradise | <i>piti 'ahuru ma hō'e</i> twenty-one |
| <i>parau</i> to converse, to speak, word, talk | <i>pō</i> evening, night |
| <i>pārau</i> pearl-shell | <i>pohe</i> to die, to be ill |
| <i>parau 'apī</i> news | <i>po'ia</i> to be hungry |
| <i>parau tahito</i> legend | <i>po'ihā</i> to be thirsty |
| <i>parauparau</i> to chat | <i>po'ipo'i</i> morning |
| <i>pareu</i> loin-cloth | <i>po'ipo'i roa</i> early in the morning |
| <i>paru</i> bait | <i>po'o'a</i> to make a noise |
| <i>pāruru</i> wall | <i>popa'a</i> foreigner, European |
| <i>pata</i> to take a photo | <i>popo</i> ball |
| <i>pātia</i> to spear (a fish), to prick | <i>poro</i> to make an announcement, corner |
| <i>pātia-mā'a</i> fork | <i>pōro</i> marble, ball |
| <i>pātiatia</i> to prick several times | <i>porote</i> to walk in procession |
| <i>patiri</i> to thunder | <i>porotetani</i> Protestant |
| <i>pāto'i</i> to refuse | <i>poti</i> boat |
| <i>pau</i> to be consumed | |
| <i>pa'uma</i> to climb up | |
| <i>pauroa</i> all | |

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>pōti'i</i> girl | <i>rātere</i> tourist |
| <i>poto</i> short (sing.) | <i>rātou</i> they |
| <i>pou</i> pillar, to descend | <i>rau</i> numerous |
| <i>pū</i> principal, trumpet, main, source, centre | <i>rāua</i> they (dl) |
| <i>pu'a</i> coral, soap | <i>rava'ai</i> fishing |
| <i>pua'a</i> pig | <i>rau'ere</i> leaf |
| <i>pua'a fanau'a</i> piglet | <i>rava'i</i> to be sufficient |
| <i>pua'ahorofenua</i> horse | <i>rave</i> to do, make, take |
| <i>pua'a maia'a</i> sow (pig) | <i>raverahi</i> many |
| <i>pua'aniho</i> goat | <i>raverau</i> many |
| <i>pua'atoro</i> cattle | <i>raverave</i> to manipulate |
| <i>puai</i> strength, strong | <i>rē</i> to be victorious, to win, prize |
| <i>pu'e</i> collection of men, animals, food | <i>re'are'a</i> yellow |
| <i>pūha</i> copra | <i>reira</i> that (which has been previously mentioned) |
| <i>puhi</i> eel | <i>reo</i> language, voice |
| <i>puhipuhi</i> to smoke | <i>repera</i> leper |
| <i>pu'ohu</i> to wrap up, packet | <i>repo</i> earth, soil, dirty |
| <i>pupā</i> bunch, usually of smaller fruits | <i>repo puehu</i> dust |
| <i>pupu</i> group | <i>rere</i> to fly (of a plane) |
| <i>pūpū</i> sea-shell | <i>rereva</i> to leave (dl) |
| <i>purau</i> kind of tree (<i>Hibiscus tiliaceous</i>) | <i>reva</i> to leave, depart, go, the sky, flag |
| <i>pure</i> to pray | <i>ri'i</i> a little |
| <i>purera'a</i> prayer | <i>rima</i> hand, arm |
| <i>purotu</i> handsome | <i>riro</i> to become, to be taken possession of |
| <i>purumu</i> street | <i>roa</i> long, very, never |
| <i>puta</i> book | <i>roa'a</i> to catch, obtain |
| <i>pūte</i> sack, bag, suitcase | <i>rohirohi</i> tired, fatigued |
| <i>putuputu</i> to assemble | <i>ro'i</i> bed |
| | <i>roimata</i> tears |
| <i>ra</i> far from the speaker | <i>Ronetona</i> London |
| <i>ra'atira</i> chief | <i>roto (i)</i> in, inside |
| <i>rā'au</i> tree, medicine | <i>rotopu</i> among |
| <i>rahi</i> big, very | <i>rouru</i> hair of the head |
| <i>rahira'a</i> majority, quantity | <i>rū</i> to hurry, rush |
| <i>ra'i</i> sky | <i>ru'au</i> old person |
| <i>raiti</i> rice | <i>ru'i</i> night (Biblical) |
| <i>rama</i> to fish at night | <i>ruperupe</i> beauty |
| <i>rari</i> wet | <i>ruru</i> bundle or collection of something tied with rope or liana |
| <i>rata</i> letter | |

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>tā-</i> causative formative with the meaning "to put something to use" | <i>tāne</i> indicates male sex with persons |
| <i>ta'a</i> to be certain, to know how to, chin, jaw | <i>tanito</i> Sanito Church |
| <i>ta'a'era'a</i> farewell | <i>tāniuniu</i> to telephone |
| <i>ta'aero</i> bad, poison, drunk | <i>tano</i> to be right |
| <i>ta'ahira'a-pere'o'o</i> bicycle race | <i>tanu</i> to plant, bury |
| <i>tā'amu</i> to tie | <i>tao'a</i> gift, present |
| <i>ta'ata</i> man, person | <i>ta'o'oto</i> to sleep (dl) |
| <i>ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o</i> taxi-driver | <i>taora</i> to throw |
| <i>ta'atahia</i> to become populous | <i>taorapopo</i> basketballer |
| <i>ta'ata-pāpa'i-hoho'a</i> artist | <i>taote niho</i> dentist |
| <i>tae</i> to arrive, come | <i>taote rā'au</i> doctor |
| <i>taea'e</i> brother (general) | <i>ta'oto</i> to sleep |
| <i>taera'a</i> arrival | <i>tapae</i> to land |
| <i>taere</i> slow, slowly | <i>tapapa</i> to pursue |
| <i>tahatai</i> beach, shore | <i>taparahi</i> to kill |
| <i>tahi</i> a, another | <i>tāparu</i> to beg |
| <i>tahua</i> floor | <i>Tapati</i> Sunday |
| <i>tahua taura'a manureva</i> airport | <i>tapau</i> lead-weight |
| <i>tahuna</i> to hide | <i>tāpe'a</i> to stop, look after, hold |
| <i>tai</i> towards the open sea | <i>tāpo'i</i> to cover |
| <i>ta'i</i> to cry | <i>tapona</i> knot |
| <i>tāi'a</i> to fish | <i>taponi</i> to abandon |
| <i>tāi'ara'a</i> fishing | <i>tapu</i> to forbid |
| <i>taiete</i> society, company | <i>tāpū</i> to cut |
| <i>taiha'a</i> purchase | <i>tāpūpū</i> to cut in two |
| <i>taime</i> time | <i>tara</i> horn |
| <i>tai'o</i> to read, count | <i>tāra</i> five francs CFP |
| <i>ta'iri</i> to hit, beat | <i>tārahu</i> to rent, hire, bill |
| <i>tāmā'a</i> to eat at table | <i>tari'a</i> ear |
| <i>tāmā'ara'a</i> feast | <i>taro</i> taro |
| <i>tamāhine</i> daughter, girl | <i>tātā'i</i> to repair |
| <i>tamāhine-ho'oho'o</i> shop assistant | <i>tataio</i> short |
| <i>tamaiti</i> child (male), son | <i>tatara</i> to remove, dig up |
| <i>tamari'i</i> child (general) | <i>tatarahapa</i> to repent |
| <i>tamāroa</i> small boy, son | <i>tātihota</i> to sugar |
| <i>tāmata</i> to try, attempt | <i>tatorita</i> Catholic |
| <i>tāmau</i> to hold, learn thoroughly, make fast, put on | <i>tātou</i> we (pl. inc.) |
| <i>tāmuta fare</i> carpenter | <i>tau</i> time, occasion, season, period |
| | <i>tāua</i> we (dl inc.) |
| | <i>taua . . . ra</i> may be used with approximately the same meaning as <i>tēra</i> (that) |

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>taui</i> to change, turn | <i>Titema</i> December |
| <i>tauiha'a</i> baggage, suitcase, present | <i>titeti</i> ticket |
| <i>tāūpo'o</i> hat | <i>titiro rata</i> postage stamp |
| <i>taura</i> race or breed of men, of animals, rope | <i>Tiunu</i> June |
| <i>tau na</i> restricted plural article | <i>Tiurai</i> July |
| <i>taura'i</i> to dry in the sun | <i>tō</i> sugar-cane |
| <i>taure'are'a</i> youth, teenager | <i>toe</i> to remain |
| <i>ta'urua</i> feast, festival | <i>to'eto'e</i> cold |
| <i>tautai</i> fishing, to fish | <i>tohora</i> whale |
| <i>tauturu</i> to help | <i>to'i</i> axe |
| <i>tavana</i> mayor, chief | <i>tō mātou, tā mātou</i> our (pl. exc.) |
| <i>tavira</i> to film, to close, key, game | <i>tō māua, tā māua</i> our (dl exc.) |
| <i>te</i> the (definite article) | <i>tomo</i> to enter, sink |
| <i>teata</i> cinema | <i>tōna, tāna</i> his, her |
| <i>tehia?</i> which one? | <i>tono</i> to send |
| <i>teiāha</i> heavy | <i>tō 'oe, tā 'oe</i> your |
| <i>teie</i> this (near the speaker) | <i>to'ohia?</i> how many? |
| <i>tei hea?</i> where? | <i>tō 'ōrua, tā 'ōrua</i> your (dl) |
| <i>teina</i> younger sibling (same sex) | <i>tō 'outou, tā 'outou</i> your (pl.) |
| <i>teitei</i> high | <i>topa</i> to give a name to, to fall |
| <i>tēna</i> that (near the person addressed) | <i>topara'a-pape</i> waterfall |
| <i>Tenuare</i> January | <i>tō rātou, tā rātou</i> their (pl.) |
| <i>tēra</i> that (not near the speakers) | <i>tō rāua, tā rāua</i> their (dl) |
| <i>tere</i> to go past, to travel, voyage | <i>toro</i> to extend |
| <i>Tetepa</i> September | <i>toro'a</i> job, trade, occupation |
| <i>ti'a</i> to stand up, be able | <i>toru</i> three |
| <i>tia'a</i> shoes | <i>toru 'ahuru</i> thirty |
| <i>tiahi</i> to chase | <i>tō tātou, tā tātou</i> our (pl. inc.) |
| <i>tia'i</i> to wait (for) | <i>tō tāua, tā tāua</i> our (dl inc.) |
| <i>tiare</i> flower | <i>totini</i> sock |
| <i>tihota</i> sugar | <i>toto</i> blood |
| <i>ti'i</i> statue, image, to pick, to gather, to get | <i>tō'u, tā'u</i> my |
| <i>tinito</i> Chinese | <i>tua'ana</i> elder sibling (same sex) |
| <i>tino</i> body | <i>tuahine</i> sister (of a boy) |
| <i>tipi</i> knife | <i>tu'ane</i> sister (of a girl) |
| <i>tiro</i> kilogram | <i>tu'epopo</i> footballer |
| <i>tita</i> guitar | <i>tuha'a</i> point, promontory, part |
| | <i>tumu</i> trunk of a tree, reason, root |
| | <i>tumu ha'ari</i> coconut tree |
| | <i>tumu rā'au</i> tree |
| | <i>tumu 'uru</i> breadfruit tree |

tunu to prepare, cook
tupa'i to kill, hit
tupohe to kill, put out a light
tupu to be present, grow, take
 place
ture law
tutau anchor
tute tax
tutu kind of tree
tūtu a cook
tu'u to put in, deposit, let down,
 put down

ū milk
'ua past tense marker
ūa rain, to rain
'ū'a kind of crab
'u'ā to bloom
uāhu wharf
uaina wine
uāti watch
ueue to shake
ufa indicates female sex in
 animals
ūfi yam
uira electricity
'umara sweet potato
'uo'uo white, clean
'upe'a net
ūpo'o head
'ura red
'uri dog

'uri fanau'a puppy
'uri ōni dog
'uri ufa bitch
'uru breadfruit
ūru 'anani orange plantation
uta inland, towards the interior
'utaru to weed, clean up
'ute'ute red

va'a outrigger canoe
vaha mouth
vāhi place, area
vāhi fa'ari'ira'a reception area
vāhi himenera'a night-spot
vāhi 'orira'a nightclub
vahie wood
vahine woman
vahine fa'aipoipo wife
vai to be, to exist, fresh water
vāiho to put, place, leave
vanira vanilla
vau I
va'u eight
ve'a newspaper
ve'ave'a hot
vera those people (about whom
 one has spoken)
vetahi some, others
vi mango
vine grapes
vinivini to tickle
vitiviti skill, quickly

ENGLISH—TAHITIAN GLOSSARY

A, an *te hō'e*
 abandon (to) *taponi*
 able (to be) *nehenehe, ti'a*
 accept (to) *fa'ariro, fa'ari'i*
 accompany (to) *fa'a'ati*
 accustomed (to be) *mātau*
 ache *mauiui*
 admire (to) *māta'ita'i*
 adopt (to) *fa'a'amu*
 aeroplane *manureva*
 after that, after, next *'i muru iho*
 afternoon (this) *'i teie āhiāhi,*
 āvatea
 again *fa'ahou, ā*
 airport *tahua taura'a manureva*
 all *pauoa, pa'ato'a*
 almost *oi*
 alone *āna'e*
 already *ēna, ā'e nei*
 also, as well *āna'e*
 also *'ato'a*
 although *noa ātu ā*
 always *noa*
 America *Marite*
 among *'i rotopu*
 amusement *'arearea*
 anchor *tutau*
 angry *'iria*
 annoy (to) *ha'ape'ape'a*
 another *te tahi*
 answer (to) *pahono*
 applaud (to) *ha'apoupou*
 apple *apara*
 April *Eperera*

arm *rima*
 army *nu'u*
 around *'e'ati noa ātu*
 arrange, place (to) *'atu'atu*
 arrival *taera'a*
 arrive (to), come *tae*
 artist *ta'ata-pāpa'i-hoho'a*
 ashamed (to make) *fa'aha'amā*
 ask (to) *āni*
 assemble (to) *putuputu*
 assistant *tamāhine-ho'oho'o*
 assure (to) *ha'apapū*
 astonished (to be) *maere*
 athlete *fa'a'eta'eta tino*
 attach, make fast (to) *tāmau*
 at that time *'i muta'a ihora*
 August *Atete*
 Australia *Auteraria*
 authorities *mana*
 authorise (to) *ha'amana*
 away from the speaker *ātu*
 axe *to'i, 'opahi*

baby *'aiū, pepe*
 bad (sing.) *'ino*
 (dl and pl.) *'i'ino*
 bag *pūte*
 baggage, suitcase *tauha'a*
 bait *paru*
 ball *popo*
 bamboo *'ofe*
 banana *mai'a*
 bank *fare moni*
 bar *fare inura'a*

basket 'ete
 basketballer *taorapopo*
 bathe (to) *hopu*
 bay 'o'o'a
 be (to) *vai*
 beach *pae tahatai*
 beautiful *haviti, nehenehe, purotu*
 beauty *ruperupe*
 because *nō te mea*
 become (to), to be taken *riro*
 bed *ro'i*
 beer *pia*
 before *nā mua ā'e, nā mua 'e, hou 'a*
 begin (to) *ha'amata*
 behind 'i *muri mai*
 bell *ōe*
 believe *fa'aro'o*
 belt (royal) *maro*
 bend (to) *ha'afefe*
 beside 'i *piha'i iho*
 between *nā ropu*
 be used to (to) *mātau*
 bicycle race *ta'ahira'a pere'o'o*
 big (sing.) *rahi, nui*
 bill *tārahu*
 bird *manu*
 bitch (a) 'uri *ufa*
 bite (to) *hohoni*
 black 'ere'ere
 blood *toto*
 bloom 'u'ā
 blue *ninamu*
 boar (wild) *pua'a pa'e*
 boat *poti*
 body *tino*
 boil (a) *fēfē*
 boil (to) *ha'apihā*
 book *puta*
 bore (to) *ha'afiu*
 bottle *mōhina*
 bottom (at the bottom) 'i *raro*

box *afata*
 boy *tamāroa*
 branch 'ama'a
 bread *farāoa*
 breadfruit 'uru
 breadfruit tree *tumu 'uru*
 break (to) 'ofati, *fati*
 break, smash (to) *parari, ha'aparari*
 breeding *fa'a'amura'a*
 bring near (to) *fa'afatata*
 broil (to) *ha'apa'apa'a*
 broken (to be) *fati*
 brother *taea'e*
 build (to) *hamani*
 bunch of fruit *atari*
 bunch (a) still attached to a branch *pe'etā*
 bunch (a) usually of smaller fruits *pupā*
 bundle of goods tied but containing only same article in the one bundle 'amui
 bundle or collection of something tied with rope or liana *ruru*
 butterfly *pepe*
 buy (to) *ho'o mai*
 by *mai, 'i, 'e*
 call (to) *pi'i*
 calm *marū*
 canoe *va'a*
 canoe (outrigger) *va'a*
 canoe race *hoera'a-va'a*
 car *pere'o'o uria*
 carpenter *tāmuta fare*
 carry (to) *āmo, hopoi*
 cat *mimi, pi'ifare*
 catch, obtain (to) *roa'a*
 Catholics *tatorita*
 cattle *pua'atoro*
 celebrate (to) *fa'ahanahana*

celebration 'oro'a
 certain (to be) *ta'a*
 chair *parahira'a*
 champion 'aito
 change *moni-hu'ahu'a*
 change (to) *taui*
 chase (to) *tiahi*
 chat (to) *parauparau*
 cheap *māmā*
 cheers! *manuia!*
 chew 'au
 chief *ra'atira, tavana*
 child (general) *tamari'i*
 child (male) *tamaiti*
 Chinese *tinito*
 chop (to) *tāpū*
 church *fare purera'a*
 cigarette 'ava'ava
 city 'oire
 class (to) *ha'apupu*
 clean 'uo'uo
 climb up (to) *pa'uma*
 close (to) (a net) *fa'a'ati*
 close, finish (to) 'opani
 clothes 'ahu
 coconut *ha'ari*
 coconut (ripe) 'opa'a
 coconut tree leaves *ni'au*
 cold *to'eto'e*
 collection of men, animals, foods *pu'e*
 comb *pāhere*
 come (to) *haere mai*
 comparative degree *ā'e*
 conclude (to), end *fa'aoti*
 consume (to) *ha'apau*
 consumed (to be) *pau*
 converse (to) *parau*
 convert (to) *fa'afariu*
 convey, drive (to) *fa'ahoro*
 cook (to) *tunu*
 cook (a) *tūtu*
 copra *pūha*

coral 'ofa'i, *pu'a*
 country *fenua*
 courage *itōito*
 cover (to) *tāpo'i*
 cover up (to) *ha'apo'i*
 crab *papa'a*
 crayfish 'oura-miti
 crumple (to) *ha'ami'omi'o*
 cry (to) *ta'i*
 cultivate (to) *fa'a'apu*
 curl (to) *ha'afirifiri*
 cut (to) *tāpū*
 cut in two (to) *tāpūpū*
 dance (to) 'ori
 daughter *tamāhine*
 dawn *a'ahiāta*
 day *mahāna, āo*
 day after tomorrow 'ananahiātu
 day before yesterday 'inanahi
 ātu
 dead (to be) *pohe*
 debase (to) *ha'afaufau*
 December *Titema*
 delay (to) *ha'amaoro*
 dentist *taote niho*
 depart (to) *reva*
 department *a'ihu'ara'au*
 deposit (to) *hava'i*
 descend (to) *pou*
 description *parau*
 die (to) *pohe*
 die (to cause to die) *ha'apohe*
 different *ē*
 difficult 'atā
 difficulties (to be in) *fifi*
 dig (to) 'o
 dig around (to) *pana*
 dig up (to) *tatara*
 dirty *repo*
 disaster 'ati
 discover (to) *ha'amaheu*
 disperse (to) *ha'amarari*

distant, far away *ātea*
 district *mata'eina'a*
 dive (to) *hopu*
 do (to) *rave*
 doctor *taote rā'au*
 dog *'uri*
 don't rush! *'eiaha 'e rū!*
 door *'opani*
 down *'i raro*
 dream *moemoea*
 dress, clothes *'ahu*
 drink (to) *inu*
 drink, toast *inuinura'a*
 drive (to) *fa'ahoro*
 drunk *ta'aero*
 dry *marō*
 dry in the sun (to) *taura'i*
 duration *maorora'a*
 dusk *mārehurehu*
 dust *repo puehu*

eager *'ana'anatae*
 ear *tari'a*
 early morning *a'ahiāta*
 early in the morning *'i te po'ipo'i roa*
 earth, soil *repo*
 easy *'ohie*
 eat (to) *'amu*
 eat at table (to) *tāmā'a*
 edge of the lagoon *pae moana*
 edge of the reef *pae ā'au*
 eel *puhi*
 egg *huero*
 eight *va'u*
 eighteen *hō'e 'ahuru ma va'u*
 elect (to) *mā'iti*
 electricity *uira*
 eleven *hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e*
 embellish (to) *fa'anehenehe*
 enclosure *'aua*
 enough *atira*

ensemble, entire group of people
 engaged in some activity *feīā*
 entangle (to) *ha'afifi*
 enter (to) *tomo*
 establish (to) *ha'amau*
 etcetera *e te vai ātura, e raverahi ātu ā*
 European *popa'a*
 evening (this) *'i teie pō*
 exceptional *maere*
 exist, to be *vai*
 explain (to) *fa'a'ite, ha'amaramarama*
 extend (to) *toro*
 eye *mata*

face *mata*
 fall *topa, ma'iri*
 family *fēti'i*
 famine (to be in a state of) *ō'e*
 fanfare *fa'ata'ira'a pū*
 far *ātea*
 far from the speaker *ra*
 farmer *fa'a'apu*
 father *metua tāne*
 fear (to) *mata'u*
 feast *tāmā'ara'a*
 feast, festival *'oro'a, ta'urua*
 February *Fepuare*
 feminine of animals *ufa*
 feminine of trees and plants *'ovahine*
 fence *'aua*
 few *'aita re'a*
 fifteen *hō'e 'ahuru ma pae*
 fifth *a pae*
 fifty *pae 'ahuru*
 fight (to) *moto*
 fill (to) *fa'a'i*
 film (to) *taviri*
 find (to) *'ite*
 finish (to) *oti, fa'a'oti, pau (of food)*

fire *āuahi*
 first *a tahi, matamua*
 first-born *matahiapo*
 fish *ī'a*
 fish (to) *tai'a*
 fisherman *ta'ata-tai'a*
 fishing *rava'ai, tai'ara'a, rama*
 five *pae*
 five francs CFP *tāra*
 flag *reva*
 flat *papū*
 float (to) *painu*
 flock, herd *nana*
 floor *tahua*
 flower *tiare*
 fly (to) *mā'ue, mahuta, rere*
 food *mā'a*
 footballer *ta'ata-tu'epopo*
 forbid (to) *tapu*
 foreigner *popa'a*
 forget, lose (to) *ha'amo'e*
 forgotten (to be) *mo'e*
 for *nō, nā*
 fork *pātia-mā'a*
 formerly *'i muta'a iho*
 fortunately *auā'e*
 forty *maha 'ahuru*
 for what reason? *'e aha te tumu?*
 four *maha*
 fourteen *hō'e 'ahuru ma maha*
 fourth *a maha*
 fowl *moa*
 fragrant *no'ano'a*
 franc *farāne*
 France *Farāni*
 Friday *Faraire*
 friend *hoa*
 from *mai*
 front (in) *'i mua mai*
 fruit *mā'a*
 full (to be) *'i*
 further away *huru ātea ātu*

game *ha'uti*
 garland *hei*
 gather (to) *pafa'i*
 gather, collect (to) *'imi*
 gather together (to) *ha'apu'e*
 gather up (to) *ha'aputu*
 get (to) *ti'i, rave*
 gift *tao'a*
 girl *pōti'i*
 give (to) *horo'a*
 glass *hi'o, hapaina*
 go (to) *haere*
 goat *pua'aniho*
 God *atua*
 good *maita'i*
 go past (to) *tere*
 good morning *'ia ora na*
 government *hau*
 Governor *tavana rahi*
 grandchild *mo'otua*
 grandfather *papa ru'au*
 grandmother *mamā ru'au*
 grape *vine*
 grass *matie*
 grate (to) *'ana*
 green *matie*
 greet (to) *āroha*
 greetings! *'ia ora na!*
 ground *fenua*
 group *pupu*
 grow (to) *tupu*
 guest *manihini*
 guitar *tita*

hair (head) *rouru*
 hair (body) *huruhuru*
 half *āfa*
 hammer *hamara*
 hand *rīma*
 handsome *purotu*
 happy (to be) *'oa'oa*
 hard, mature (to be) *pa'ari*
 hasten (to) *ha'ape'epe'e*

hat *tāupo'o*
 he, him 'oia, 'ona
 head *ūpo'o*
 heap up (to) *ha'aputu*
 hear (to) *fa'aro'o*
 heavy *teiāha*
 hello! 'ia ora na!
 help (to) *tauturu*
 hen *moa ufa*
 here 'onei
 hibiscus 'aute
 hide (to) *tahuna*
 high *teitei*
 hire (to) *tārahu*
 his, her *tōna, tāna*
 hit (to) *ta'iri*
 hold (to) *mau, tāmāu, tāpe'a*
 hole 'apo'o
 holiday *fa'afa'aeara'a*
 hook *matau*
 hope (to) *mana'o*
 horse *pua'ahorofenua*
 hospital *fare ma'i*
 hot *ve'ave'a*
 hotel *hotera*
 hour *hora*
 house *fare*
 how? *nafea?*
 how are things? 'e aha te huru?
 however *āre'a ra*
 how many? 'ehia?, to'ohia?
 how much? 'ehia moni?
 hungry (to be) *po'ia*
 hunt (to) *āuā'u, ā'u*
 hurry (to) *rū*

I *au, vau*
 if *mai te peu ē, mai te mea ē*
 ill (to be) *pohe 'i te ma'i*
 immense *nui*
 import (to) *fa'atae*
 in, inside 'i roto, nā ni'a
 increase (to) *fa'arava'i*

information *fa'a'itera'a*
 intelligence *maramarama*
 interrogative marker *anei*
 in the middle 'i ropu
 into 'i roto
 introduce (to) *fa'afarerei*
 it is (demonstrative article) 'o, 'e

key *taviri*
 kill (to) *ha'apohe*
 kill (to), extinguish *tupohe*
 kilogram *tiro*
 king *ari'i*
 knife *tipi*
 knot *taponā*
 know (to) 'ite, mātāu

lagoon *pae moana*
 lamb *pinia mamoe*
 land *fenua*
 land (to) *tapae*
 language *reo*
 last *hope'a*
 last day *mahāna hope'a*
 laugh (to) 'ata
 law *ture*
 lead-weight *tapau*
 leaf *rau'ere rā'au*
 learn (to) *ha'api'i*
 leave (to) *reva*
 Leeward Islands *motu raro*
 mata'i
 leg 'avae
 legend 'a'amu, parau tahito
 length *maorora'a*
 leper *repera*
 let down (to) (net) *tu'u*
 letter *rata*
 level (to make) *ha'amānina*
 level, assure (to) *ha'apapū*
 lie (to) *ha'avare*
 lie down (to) *ta'oto*
 lift (to) *mā'e*

light *mōri*
 lighthouse *mōri-turama-āva*
 like (to) *hina'aro*
 like, as *mai*
 listen to (to) *fa'aro'o*
 little *iti*
 little (a) *ri'i*
 live (to) *ora, noho*
 loin-cloth *pareu*
 London *Ronetona*
 long *roa*
 long time *maoro*
 look after (to) *tāpe'a*
 look at (to) *māta'ita'i, hi'o*
 look for (to) *pa'imi, 'imi*
 lose (to) *ha'amo'e, mo'e*
 love (to) *here*

main *pū*
 majority *rahira'a*
 make (to) *rave*
 make a noise (to) *po'o'a*
 man *ta'ata*
 mango *vi*
 manipulate (to) *raverave*
 manner *huru*
 many 'e raverahi, 'e raverau
 marble *pōro*
 March *Māti*
 market *mātete*
 mat *pe'ue*
 match *mati*
 May *Mē*
 mayor *tavana*
 me 'ia'u
 meat 'ina'i
 medicine *rā'au*
 meet (to) *farerei*
 member *mero*
 middle (in the) 'i ropu
 milk *ū*
 minute *miniti*
 mirror *hi'o*

missionary 'orometua
 mistake *hape*
 mix (to) *ōi*
 Monday *Monire*
 money *moni*
 month 'ava'e
 moon 'ava'e
 Moorea *Mo'orea*
 Mormon *momoni*
 morning *po'ipo'i*
 morning (this) 'i teie po'ipo'i
 mosquito *naonao*
 mother *metua vahine*
 mountain *mou'a*
 mouth *vaha*
 my *tō'u, tā'u*

name *i'oa*
 name (to) *topa*
 namely 'oia ho'i
 near the addressee *na*
 near the speaker *nei*
 neck 'arapo'a
 negative imperative 'eiaha
 net 'upe'a
 never 'aita roa ātu
 new 'apī
 news *parau apī*
 newspaper *ve'a*
 New Zealand *Niu Terani*
 nice *āu*
 night *ru'i, pō*
 night (last) 'i napō
 nightclub *vāhi 'orira'a*
 nine *iva*
 nineteen *hō'e 'ahuru ma iva*
 no 'aita
 noise (to make a) *maniania*
 no more *fa'ahou*
 November *Novema*
 now 'i teie taime, 'i teie nei
 number *numera*
 numerous *rau*

- observe, see (to) *hi'o*
 obtain (to) *roa'a, noa'a*
 obtained (to be) *roa'a, noa'a*
 occupation *toro'a*
 October *Atopa*
 officials *hui mana*
 often *pinepine*
 old person *ru'au*
 on 'i ni'a
 once more *fa'ahou*
 one *hō'e, tahi*
 one hundred *hō'e hanere*
 one hundred and one *hō'e hanere ma hō'e*
 one thousand *hō'e tauatini*
 on foot *nā raro noa*
 only *āna'e, noa*
 open (to) *matara, 'iriti*
 open up (to) *piharahara*
 or 'aore ra
 orchestra *pupu-fa'a'arearea*
 organise (to) *fa'atupu*
 orange 'anani
 orange plantation *ūru 'anani*
 other *te tahi*
 our (dl exc.) *tō māua, tā māua*
 our (dl inc.) *tō tāua, tā tāua*
 our (pl. exc.) *tō mātou, tā mātou*
 our (pl. inc.) *tō tātou, tā tātou*
 outrigger canoe *va'a*
 outside 'i rapae
- packet *pu'ohu*
 paddle (to) *hoe*
 page 'api
 pain (to inflict) *ha'amauui, mauui*
 panic (don't) 'eiaha 'e rū
 paper 'api-parau
 paper bag *fa'ari'i*
 paradise *parataito*
 parcel *afata tauiha'a*
 parent *metua*
- pass (to) *hemo*
 passenger *horo-patete*
 passage (reef) *āva*
 patient (to be) *fa'amahu*
 pawpaw 'i'ita
 pay (to) 'aufau
 pearl-shell *pārau*
 pearl-shell merchants *feiā-rave-pārau*
 pen *pēni-pāpa'i*
 people *hui ra'atira*
 pepper *pēpa*
 perhaps 'e riro paha
 period *ārea*
 period, time *maorora'a*
 person *ta'ata*
 pursue (to) *tapapa*
 photo *hoho'a*
 pick (to) *ti'i*
 pick, pluck (to) *pafa'i*
 pierce (to) *ha'aputa*
 pig *pua'a*
 piglet *pua'a fanau'a*
 place *vāhi*
 place (to take) *tupu*
 plane *manureva*
 plant (to) *tanu*
 plantation *fa'a'apu*
 play (to) *ha'uti*
 pleased (to be) 'oa'oa
 pleasure, delight 'oa'oa, 'arearea
 point, promontory (the) 'otu'e
 pointed 'oi
 poison *ta'aero*
 police *muto'i*
 pollenate (to) *fa'atito*
 Polynesian *ma'ohi*
 population *hui ra'atira*
 post *pou*
 post (to) *hapono*
 postage stamp *titiro rata*
 post office *fare rata*
 pray (to) *pure*

- prayer *purera'a*
 pregnant *hapū*
 prepare (to) *tonu, ineine*
 present *tao'a*
 presidency *peretiteni*
 price *moni-ho'o*
 prick (to) *pātia, ti'i*
 prick several times (to) *pātiatia*
 principal *pū*
 prison *fare 'auri*
 prize *rē*
 produce, bear fruit (to) *hotu*
 promontory, point 'otu'e
 Protestant *porotetani*
 pull, pull up (to) *huti*
 punish (to) *ha'avī, fa'ahapa*
 puppy 'uri fanau'a
 purchase *tauiha'a*
 put (to) *vāiho*
 put down (to) *tu'u*
 put, deposit (to) *hava'i*
 put in a bag (to) 'o'omo
- quantity *rahira'a*
 queen *ari'i vahine*
 quickly 'oi'oi, vitiviti
- race *fa'ahorora'a*
 race, breed *taura*
 rafter 'aho
 rain (to) *ūa*
 raised (to be) *mara'a*
 rat 'iore
 raw *ota*
 razor *hahu*
 read (to) *tai'o*
 reason *tumu*
 receive (to) *fa'ari'i*
 reception area *vāhi fa'ari'ira'a*
 red 'ura
 reef *ā'au*
 refuse (to) *pāto'i*
 religion *fa'aro'o*
- remain (to) *fa'aea, toe*
 remove (to) *tatara*
 rent (to) *tārahu*
 repair (to) *tātā'i*
 repent (to) *tatarahapa*
 reserve, remain (to) *fa'aea*
 restaurant *fare tāmā'ara'a*
 return (to) *ho'i*
 rice *raiti*
 right (to be) *tano*
 ripe *para*
 rise (to) *mara'a*
 river *anavai*
 roast (to) *ha'apa'apa'a*
 room *piha*
 rooster *moa ōni*
 rope *taura*
 round (to make) *ha'amenemene*
 row (to) *hoe*
 royal family *ari'i*
 run (to) *horo, hohoro* (dl)
- sack, bag *pūte*
 sad (to be) *mauiui*
 sailor *matara*
 salt *miti popa'a*
 sand *one*
 Sanito Church *tanito*
 Saturday *Mahāna Mā'a*
 scatter (to) *ha'apurara*
 school *fare ha'api'ira'a*
 scoop (to) *pana*
 sea *miti, moana*
 sea-shell *pūpū*
 sea-shore *pae tahatai*
 season *tau*
 second *a piti*
 see (to) 'ite
 seize (to) *haru*
 sell (to) *ho'o ātu*
 send (to) *hapono, hopoi, tono*
 September *Tetepa*
 seven *hitu*

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| seventeen | <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu</i> | speak (to) | <i>parau</i> |
| shake (to) | <i>ueue</i> | spear (to) | <i>pātia</i> |
| shark | <i>ma'o</i> | spear | <i>'auri</i> |
| sharp | <i>'oi</i> | spill (to) | <i>ha'amani'i</i> |
| shave (to) | <i>hahu</i> | sprain | <i>'o'i</i> |
| sheep | <i>mamoe</i> | spread open (to) | <i>mahora</i> |
| shell necklace | <i>hei-pūpū</i> | stalk, liana | <i>'ata</i> |
| shine (to) | <i>'ana'ana</i> | stand up (to) | <i>ti'a</i> |
| shirt | <i>'ahu, 'a'ahu 'o'omo</i> | star | <i>feti'a</i> |
| shoe | <i>tia'a</i> | stare (to) | <i>hi'ohi'o</i> |
| shop | <i>fare toa</i> | start (to) | <i>matara</i> |
| shop (to) | <i>ho'o-haere</i> | start, commence (to) | <i>ha'amata</i> |
| shop assistant | <i>tamāhine-ho'oho'o</i> | start, startle (to) | <i>hitimahuta</i> |
| short | <i>poto</i> | statue | <i>ti'i</i> |
| shorten (to) | <i>ha'apoto</i> | stay (to) | <i>fa'aea</i> |
| shovel | <i>ōpe</i> | stay, holiday | <i>fa'afa'aeara'a</i> |
| sick (to be) | <i>ma'i hia</i> | steal (to) | <i>'ia, 'eia</i> |
| signal, tell (to) | <i>fa'a'ite</i> | steamer | <i>pahī</i> |
| since | <i>mai te mahāna</i> | stick | <i>'ama'a rā'au</i> |
| sing (to) | <i>himene</i> | still | <i>noa</i> |
| sink a post (to) | <i>fa'ati'a</i> | stir (to) | <i>fa'arapu</i> |
| sister (of a boy) | <i>tuahine</i> | stomach | <i>'opū</i> |
| sit (to) | <i>noho 'i raro, parahi</i> | stone | <i>'ofa'i</i> |
| six | <i>ōno</i> | stop (to) | <i>tāpe'a, fa'afa'aea</i> |
| sixteen | <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma ōno</i> | straight | <i>'afaro</i> |
| sixty | <i>ōno 'ahuru</i> | straighten (to) | <i>fa'a'afaro</i> |
| skill | <i>vitiviti</i> | street | <i>purumu</i> |
| sky | <i>ra'i, reva</i> | street, avenue | <i>āroā</i> |
| sleep (to) | <i>ta'oto</i> | strength | <i>puai</i> |
| sling | <i>ma'a</i> | strength (to exert) | <i>ha'apuai</i> |
| slowly, slow | <i>taere</i> | strong | <i>puai</i> |
| small | <i>iti, hu'a</i> | stubborn | <i>māro</i> |
| smoke (to) | <i>puhipuhi</i> | subject | <i>huru</i> |
| society, company | <i>taiete</i> | succeed (to) | <i>manuia</i> |
| sock | <i>totini</i> | sufficient (to be) | <i>rava'i, nava'i</i> |
| soft | <i>marū</i> | sugar | <i>tihota</i> |
| soldier | <i>fa'ehau</i> | sugar-cane | <i>tō</i> |
| son | <i>tamaiti, tamāroa</i> | suitcase | <i>tauuha'a, pūte</i> |
| song | <i>himene</i> | sun | <i>mahāna</i> |
| soon | <i>fatata</i> | Sunday | <i>Tapati</i> |
| sorry (to be) | <i>pe'ape'a</i> | sure (to be) | <i>papū</i> |
| sow (female pig) | <i>pua'a maia'a</i> | surpassed (to be) | <i>hemo</i> |
| sour | <i>'ava'ava</i> | surround (to) | <i>fa'a'ati</i> |

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|
| sweet | <i>monamona</i> | throw (to) | <i>taora</i> |
| sweetheart | <i>here</i> | thunder (to) | <i>patiri</i> |
| sweet potato | <i>'umara</i> | Thursday | <i>Mahāna Maha</i> |
| swim (to) | <i>'āu</i> | ticket | <i>titeti</i> |
| sword | <i>'o'e</i> | tie (to) | <i>tā'amū</i> |
| table | <i>'amura'amā'a</i> | time, hour | <i>hora, taime, tau</i> |
| take (to) | <i>rave mai</i> | tired | <i>rohirohi</i> |
| take off (to) (plane) | <i>mahuta</i> | today | <i>'i teie nei mahāna</i> |
| talk, converse (to) | <i>parauparau</i> | toilet | <i>fare iti</i> |
| taro | <i>taro</i> | tomorrow | <i>'ananahi</i> |
| taxi, car | <i>pere'o'o</i> | tomorrow evening | <i>'ananahi ia' pō</i> |
| taxi-driver | <i>ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o</i> | tomorrow morning | <i>'ananahi ia po'ipo'i</i> |
| tears | <i>roimata</i> | tonight | <i>'i teie ru'i, 'i teie pō</i> |
| telephone (to) | <i>tāniuniu</i> | tooth | <i>nihō</i> |
| tell, explain (to) | <i>fa'a'ite</i> | tour (to) | <i>fa'a'ati</i> |
| temple | <i>marae</i> | tourist | <i>rātere</i> |
| ten | <i>hō'e 'ahuru</i> | town | <i>'oire</i> |
| terrify (to) | <i>fa'amata'u</i> | town hall | <i>fare hau</i> |
| Territorial Assembly | <i>Apo'ora'a Rahi</i> | toy | <i>ha'uti</i> |
| thank (to) | <i>maurūru</i> | translate (to) | <i>'iriti</i> |
| thank you! | <i>maurūru!</i> | transport (to) | <i>'afa'i</i> |
| that (not near the speakers) | <i>tēra</i> | travel (to) | <i>tere</i> |
| that (near the person addressed) | <i>tēna</i> | tree | <i>tumu rā'au</i> |
| thatch (to) | <i>āto</i> | trip | <i>tere</i> |
| the | <i>te</i> | trouble | <i>pe'ape'a</i> |
| their (dl) | <i>tō rāua, tā rāua</i> | trousers | <i>piripou</i> |
| their (pl.) | <i>tō rātou, tā rātou</i> | true, real | <i>mau</i> |
| then | <i>ihora, ātura, 'i muri iho</i> | trumpet | <i>pū</i> |
| they (pl.) (dl) | <i>rātou, rāua</i> | trunk of a tree | <i>tumu</i> |
| thief | <i>'eiā</i> | try (to) | <i>tāmata</i> |
| thing | <i>mea</i> | Tuesday | <i>Mahāna Piti</i> |
| think (to) | <i>mana'o, feruri</i> | turtle | <i>honu</i> |
| third | <i>a toru</i> | twelve | <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma piti</i> |
| thirsty (to be) | <i>po'iha</i> | twenty | <i>piti 'ahuru</i> |
| thirteen | <i>hō'e 'ahuru ma toru</i> | twenty-one | <i>piti 'ahuru ma hō'e</i> |
| thirty | <i>toru 'ahuru</i> | twin | <i>maeha'a</i> |
| this | <i>teie</i> | twisted | <i>fefe</i> |
| these | <i>teie mau</i> | two | <i>piti</i> |
| three | <i>toru</i> | under | <i>'i raro ā'e</i> |
| | | understand (to) | <i>'ite</i> |

unless *maori ra*
 unripe *pi*
 untie (to) *ha'amatarara*
 until *'e tae ātu, 'a tae roa ātu*
 U.S.A. *Marite*

valley *fa'a*
 vanilla *vanira*
 very *rahi, roa*
 victorious (to be) *rē*
 visit, admire (to) *māta'ita'i*
 visit, tour (to) *fa'a'ati*
 voice *reo*
 vomit (to) *ha'apiha'e*
 voyage *tere*

wait for (to) *tia'i*
 wake up (to) *āra*
 walk (to) *ōri haere*
 walk in procession (to) *porote*
 wall *paruru*
 want (to) *hina'aro*
 warm *mahanahana*
 warn (to) *ā'o*
 wash (to) *horōi*
 wash repeatedly (to) *horohorōi*
 waste (to) *ha'amaū'a*
 wasted (to be) *maū'a*
 watch *uāti*
 watch (to) *hi'o*
 water *pape, vai*
 water (to) *pipi*
 waterfall *topara'a-pape*
 way, method *huru*
 wave *'are miti*
 we (dl exc.) *māua*
 we (dl inc.) *tāua*
 we (pl. exc.) *mātou*
 we (pl. inc.) *tātou*
 wear (to) *'o'omo*
 weary *fiu*
 weave (to) *ha'une*

Wednesday *Mahāna Toru*
 weed (to) *'utaru*
 week *hepetoma*
 weep, lament (to) *mihī*
 weigh (to) *faito, fa'afaito*
 weight *tapau*
 welcome! *manava!, haere mai!*
 well *māita'i*
 wet *haumi, rari*
 whale *tohora*
 wharf *uāhu*
 what? *'e aha?*
 when? *afea?, ahea?, anafea?, inafea?, 'i anafea?*
 where? *tei hea? 'i hea?*
 where to? *'i hea?*
 where from? *mai hea mai?*
 which? *'o vai?, tehia?*
 whistle (to) *hio*
 white *'uo'uo*
 who? *'o vai?*
 whose? *nō vai?, nā vai?*
 whose place (at)? *'i ō vai?*
 whom? (to) *'ia vai?*
 why? *'e aha? nō te aha?*
 wife *vahine fa'aipoipo*
 win (to) *rē*
 wind *mata'i*
 window *ha'amaramarama*
 wine *uaina*
 wise *'ite*
 with *mai, e, nā muri iho*
 without *'ore*
 woman *vahine*
 wood *vahie*
 word *parau*
 work *'ohipa*
 world *āo*
 wound (to) *pēpe*
 wrap up (to) *pu'ohu*
 write (to) *pāpa'i*
 writing-paper *'api-parau*
 wrong (to be) *hape*

yam *ūfi*
 year *matahiti*
 yellow *re'are'a*
 yes *e, 'oia*
 yesterday *'inanahi*
 you *'oe*
 you (dl) *'ōrua*

you (pl.) *'outou*
 young (the offspring of animals)
fanau'a
 your *tō 'oe, tā 'oe*
 your (dl) *tō 'orua, tā 'orua*
 your (pl.) *tō 'outou, tā 'outou*
 youth *tamari'i, taure'are'a*

INDEX

(references are to sections)

- a, 11
 'ā, 36
 ability, 123
 accompaniment, 84
 active verbs, 46
 adjectives, 23–8
 ā'e, 25
 afea, 100
 after, 77
 again, 78
 agent, 47
 ahiri, 130
 ai, 46 (a, ix), 81, 98
 'aita, 56
 'aiteā, 60
 all, 27
 already, 78
 'amui, 13
 āna'e, 28
 anafea, 100
 anei, 93, 114
 'aore, 56
 'aore ā, 60
 'aore ra, 133
 'aore re'a, 72
 Apetahi Flower, 141
 Arrival in Tahiti, 92
 articles, 11–13
 at, 80
 'atā, 13
 atari, 13
 'ato'a, 27
 attempted action, 125
 attributive, 66
 ātu, 81
 ātura, 77
- base, 49
 be, 70
 because, 88
 before, 77
- benefactive, 83
 Breadfruit Legend, 144
 by whom?, 95
- can, 123
 cardinal numbers, 15, 16
 causative verbs, 49–51
 cause, 88
 changing modifiers, 24
 common nouns, 44
 common noun possessors, 38
 comparative, 25, 26
 competence, 124
 completed action, 46(a, viii)
 conditional, 130
 conjunctions, 133
 consonants, 1
 conversation, 104
 Copra, 119
- days of the week, 18
 demonstratives, 30–4
 dependent clauses, 105–17
 desiderative, 128
 diphthongs, 4
 direction, 81
 distant past, 46(a, vi)
 dual, 12
 dual form of verb, 53
- e (with), 84
 ē, 115
 'e (article), 11
 'e (by), 47, 95
 'e (future), 46(a, ix)
 'e aha, 94, 98, 100, 102, 110, 113
 Eel's Hole, 138
 'e 'ere, 58
 'ehia?, 16
 'ei, 66, 80

INDEX

175

- 'ei hea, 99
 'e'ita, 57
 elision, 9
 emphatic pronoun, 122
 'e nehenehe, 123
 enumerations, 16
 'e'ore, 57
 equality, 26
 equational sentence, 74
 'e it'a, 123
 'e vai?, 95
 every, 27
- fā'a-, 49
 fanau'a, 13
 fatata, 77
 feiā, 13
 Fishing, 132
 Fishing with Stones, 143
 Fourteenth of July, The, 139
 frequency, 78
 from, 80
 frustrative, 46(a, x)
 future tense, 46(a, ix)
- gender, 13
 general articles, 11
 glottal stop, 1, 5
- ha'a-, 49
 habitual action, 46(a, viii)
 have, 75
 hia, 47, 51, 52, 85
 hina'aro, 128
 ho'i, 129
 House-building, 142
 how, 112
 how?, 101
 how many?, 16
 hui, 13
- 'i, 44, 46(a, iv), 47
 ia, 54
 'ia, 43, 90, 110
 'i anafea, 100
 if, 130
 'i hea, 99, 117
 iho, 46(a, v), 122
 ihoa, 129
 imperatives, 90
 imperfect tense, 46(a, ii)
 impersonal verbs, 69
- in, 80
 inability, 123
 inafea, 100
 indirect object, 65
 'i ni'a, 80
 initial vowels, 6
 in order to, 87
 intensified verbs, 54
 interrogative, 93–102
 interrogative non-subject, 95
 interrogative subject, 94
 intransitive, 63
 'i o vai?, 95
 'i raro, 80
 irregular verbs, 47(iii)
- kinship terms, 146
 know how to, 124
- Lepers' Feast Day, 145
 like, 26
 location, 80
- mā, 13
 ma'a, 13
 mai, 81–116
 maia'a, 13
 mai hea mai, 99
 maira, 46(a, i)
 mai te, 111
 mai te mea e, 130
 mai te peu e, 130
 manner, 85
 many, 72
 Market, 127
 ma te, 111
 mea, 73
 months of the year, 19
 must, 129
- na, 12, 46(a, iv), 81
 nā, 37, 47, 75
 nafea, 101, 112
 nā muri iho, 84
 nana, 13
 nā roto, 80
 nau, 12
 nā vai, 94
 necessitative, 129
 need to, 129
 negative, 56–61, 72, 73, 74
 negative interrogative, 93

nei, 46, 81
 never, 59
nō, 36, 75, 83, 95
nō hea, 99
 nominalisation, 46(c)
 non-verbal sentences, 72–5
 normal modifiers, 23
nō te aha, 98, 109
nō te mea, 88
 not yet, 60
 noun agents, 47
 noun + *hia*, 52
 numerals, 15–17

'o, 11
 'ō, 36
 object, 44
 object markers, 44
 often, 78
ōni, 13
 only, 28
 Orange-picking, 140
 ordinal numbers, 17
'ore, 61, 98
'otāne, 13
oti, 46(a, vii)
 ought, 129
'ovahine, 13
'o vai, 94–5

pa'ato'a, 27
pa'e, 13
 participial forms, 46(c)
 passive verbs, 47
 past tense, 46(a, iii–vii)
pauroa, 27
 Pearl-shell Diving, 134
pe'etā, 13
 pharyngealisation, 6
pinia, 13
 placing of time phrases, 77
 possession, 36–40
 possessive pronoun, 75
 possessive statements, 40
 Post Office, 97
 present tense, 46(a, i)
 pronouns, 42–3
 pronoun agents, 47
 pronoun objects, 43
 pronoun possessors, 37
 pronoun subject, 42
 pronunciation, 1–9

proper nouns, 11, 44
 proper noun possessors, 39
pu'e, 13
pupā, 13
 purpose, 87

quantity, 13

ra, 46, 81
rahi, 25
raverahi, 72
raverau, 72
 recent past tense, 46(a, v)
 reciprocal, 121
 reflexive, 120
roa, 25, 59
ruru, 13

sex, 13
 Shops, 108
 since, 77, 116
 so that, 87
 special articles, 13
 special verb fillers, 46(b)
 stress, 8
 superlative, 25
 Sweet Potatoes, 137
 syllable, 7

tā-, 50
tā, 36
ta'ato'a, 27
 table of articles, 11
 Tahiti, 92
tāne, 13
taua . . . ra, 33
tau na, 12
taura, 13
te, 11, 46, 94, 105–6
tehia, 95
te hō'e, 11
tei, 80, 94, 105–6
teie, 30
tei hea, 99
tei reira, 117
 telling the time, 20
te mau, 11
 temporal expression, 21
tēna, 31
 tenses, 46
iēra, 32
tēra ra, 133

te reira, 34
te tahi, 11
te tahi mau, 11
 that, 31–4, 115
 the, 11
 Things to do in Tahiti, 136
 this, 30
 time, 20, 77
 time phrases, 77
tō, 36
to'ohia?, 16
 to whom?, 95
 transitive, 64
 try, 125

'ua, 46, 73
ufa, 13
 unreal condition, 130
 useful phrases, 10

vahine, 13
vera, 42
vai, 70
 variants, 1
 verb, 45–7
 verbal sentences, 63–8
vetahi mau, 11

vowels, 2
 vowel length, 3
 vowel sequences, 4
 vowel word initial, 6

want, 128
 what, 113
 what?, 102
 when, 110
 when?, 100
 where, 117
 where?, 99
 where from?, 99
 where to?, 99
 whether, 114
 which?, 94
 while, 111
 who, 105
 who?, 94
 whom, 106
 whom?, 95
 whose?, 95
 why, 109
 why?, 98
 with, 84
 without, 61

young of animals, 13



Text set in 10 on 11pt Monotype Times Roman
 by The Universities Press Pty Ltd Melbourne
 and printed on 89 gsm Pacote paper
 by Halstead Press Pty Ltd Sydney